

Educ 1 918.179.133
1/0

Harvard College Library



BEQUEST OF

HENRY WILLIAMSON HAYNES

(Class of 1851)

OF BOSTON

October 22, 1912



3 2044 097 055 651

Young W. C. Haynes
from
The Publishers.

H. W. Hayes.

LATIN COMPOSITION

AN ELEMENTARY GUIDE

TO

WRITING IN LATIN

PART I.—CONSTRUCTIONS

PART II.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION

BY

J. H. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH

BOSTON
GINN AND HEATH

1879

✓ - due 1 918.74.133

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
FROM THE LIBRARY OF
HENRY WILLIAMSON HAYNES
JUNE 13, 1927

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1875, by
J. H. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH,
in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: JOHN WILSON & SON,
CAMBRIDGE.

PREFACE.

THIS book completes the series of preparatory text-books announced by the present editors. It has been prepared with a view to furnish a sufficient amount of study and practice in Latin composition, during the last year of preparation for college, and the first of a college course. It supposes in the learner a fair acquaintance with the language, gained by the reading of the usual authors and the careful study of grammar and notes, with some elementary practice in writing, at least as much as that given in the "Method," to which this is intended as a sequel.

"Latin Composition," so called, has often been taught solely by the use of detached sentences illustrating the various constructions of syntax, translated out of Roman authors, to be re-translated into the original form. We are persuaded that, however serviceable this may be to give a certain mechanical familiarity with the formal rules of Grammar, it is not a good preparation for "composition," in the sense that properly belongs to that word. The best way to learn intelligently the usages of the language is to put *real English into real Latin*. While we seek, therefore, to cover the entire ground of syntactical constructions, the suggestions given in this book are throughout from the English point of view. The question we have attempted to answer is not "How closely may this or that phrase in Cicero be imitated by the learner?"

but, "How may good common English be best represented in Latin forms?" We would thus suggest a comparison not merely of the words or the constructions, but (so to speak) of the genius and spirit of the two tongues, which, we are convinced, is the true way of appreciating what is most characteristic and best worth knowing in the ancient authors.

With this view, the passages to be rendered into Latin are freely selected from the sources which seemed suitable to our purpose.* It will be observed that we have very early introduced continuous paragraphs or narratives ; which, we believe, are not only more interesting in themselves, but will be found easier in practice than detached sentences, besides the advantage of exhibiting the rarer constructions *in situ*, and not as mere isolated puzzles. The extracts have been very carefully selected, with a view not to anticipate constructions not already given ; or, where this is inevitable, it is hoped they are sufficiently helped by notes and vocabulary, while they are accompanied in every case by full preliminary instruction.†

The earlier of these extracts are chiefly anecdotes from Roman history, or other matter within a range already familiar to the pupil. In the later ones we have been obliged to introduce, here and there, modern material and ideas. These, it is likely, will tax more severely the pupil's knowledge and capacity ; but it seems evident that the more intricate constructions of Latin prose can be best understood when we meet them from our own point of view, and find the need of them to express our own forms of thought. It should be understood that the difficulties they include are *those of the language itself* ; and it is best to meet them fairly at the start, rather than evade or disguise them. There is no such thing

* Of these we may specify Smith's "Smaller History of Rome," and Sargent's "Easy Passages for Translation into Latin."

† It may be worth while to suggest that the teacher may at his pleasure select single passages or phrases for elementary practice.

as making a Ciceronian period or an indirect discourse in Cæsar or Livy an easy thing to boys ; and the student is not fairly master of them until he can to some extent follow and reproduce them in his own work. The difficulties may, however, be lightened to any extent, at the discretion of the teacher, even to the extent of going over in detail the whole ground of each exercise in advance.

It will be observed that a Vocabulary has been prepared to Part First only ; and that this aims only to give, as a simple mechanical convenience, the Latin terms which may be used in the passages where the English ones actually occur in the book, leaving the mind free to attend wholly to the construction. The learner should be impressed from the start with the need of *habitually consulting his Latin Lexicon*, to obtain the true meaning and use of the terms he employs. Such explanation as could be given in a partial vocabulary would be at best of very doubtful service. Even if on some grounds desirable, the need of it appears to be removed by White's excellent "English Latin Dictionary for the use of Junior Students," which within reasonable limits of size and price furnishes a guide such as every learner should possess, who aims at any thing better than the mere performance of the required task of the day ; while the more advanced student will not be content without something at least as complete as the larger work of Smith or Arnold. The design of Part Second obviously excludes the use of any partial or special list of words. For this, we trust that the suggestions of the Introduction, and the frequent assistance given in the notes, — with the faithful consultation of the Lexicon, which must always be supposed, — will prove a sufficient guide.

CAMBRIDGE, May 10, 1876.

THE following works, which have been freely used in the preparation of this manual, will be of service to those who desire to give the subject a more thorough study. Those marked 2, 3, 4, have been used to some extent as text-books in this country.

1. *Theorie des lateinischen Stiles*, von C. J. GRYSAR. 2d ed. Köln: J. G. Schmitz. 1843.

A very complete and elaborate treatise, the source from which excellent material has been largely drawn by others.

2. *Hints towards Latin Prose Composition*. By ALEX. W. POTTS. 3d ed. London: Macmillan & Co. 1872.

A brief but admirable essay on the main points of Latin style and expression (without exercises), with a great number of brief illustrations, some of which will be found in the introduction to Part II. of the present manual (pp. 126-129).

3. *Parallel Extracts*, arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON. Part I. Historical and Epistolary. London: Macmillan & Co. 1874.

An excellent working manual, the passages on opposite pages suggesting points of comparison between Latin and English style, and with numerous figured references to the introductory Notes.

4. *A Manual of Latin Prose Composition for the use of Schools and Colleges*. By the Rev. HENRY MUSGRAVE WILKINS. 3d ed. London: Parker, Son, & Brown. 1861.

Numerous exercises, very fully annotated, a portion being "adapted" (in English) to the Latin idiom. With introductory remarks and a table of idiomatic expressions. A Key is published for the use of teachers.

5. *Principia Latina*. Part VI. Short Tales and Anecdotes from Ancient History for translation into Latin Prose. By WILLIAM SMITH, D.D. 3d ed. London: John Murray. 1870.

CONTENTS.

PART. I. — CONSTRUCTIONS.

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| LESSON 1. The Order of Words | I |
| 2. Rules of Agreement. — 1. Apposition | 3 |
| 3. " " 2. The Verb | 4 |
| 4. " " 3. Adjectives | 6 |
| 5. Adjectives : Special Uses | 8 |
| 6. Pronouns. — 1. Personal and Reflexive | 10 |
| 7. " 2. Demonstrative | 12 |
| 8. " 3. Relative | 14 |
| 9. " 4. Interrogative and Indefinite | 17 |
| 10. Cases. — 1. As Objects of Verbs | 20 |
| 11. " 2. As Modifying Adjectives | 23 |
| 12. " 3. Indirect Relations | 25 |
| 13. " 4. Cause, Means, and Quality | 28 |
| 14. " 5. Separation and Comparison | 32 |
| 15. " 6. Special Uses of the Genitive | 34 |
| 16. " 7. Use of Two Cases | 37 |
| 17. " 8. Time and Place | 39 |
| 18. " 9. Prepositions | 42 |
| 19. Verbs. — 1. Narrative Tenses | 45 |
| 20. " 2. The Passive Voice | 48 |
| 21. " 3. Infinitive Constructions | 53 |
| 22. " 4. Participial Constructions | 57 |
| 23. " 5. Gerundive Constructions | 60 |
| 24. " 6. Subjunctive Constructions | 62 |
| 25. Relations of Time | 66 |
| 26. Purpose and Result | 69 |
| 27. Conditional Sentences | 72 |
| 28. Substantive Clauses | 74 |
| 29. Intermediate Clauses | 77 |
| 30. Indirect Discourse | 80 |
| 31. Certain Special Constructions | 83 |

PART SECOND.

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| INTRODUCTION : 1. Choice of the Word or Phrase | 119 |
| 2. Structure of the Sentence | 126 |
| 3. Idiomatic Phrases | 130 |
| EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION. | |
| I. Death of Epaminondas | 135 |
| II. The Ring of Gyges | 135 |
| III. Cyrus the Younger | 136 |
| IV. Xenophon's Sacrifice | 136 |
| V. The Sibylline Books | 137 |
| VI. Hannibal and Antiochus | 138 |
| VII. The Talking Crow | 139 |
| VIII. Hannibal in the Alps. — <i>Arnold</i> | 139 |
| IX. The Embassy of Philip. — <i>Arnold</i> | 140 |
| X. Hannibal near Rome | 141 |
| XI. Young Scipio | 142 |
| XII. Hannibal's Exile | 143 |
| XIII. The Tale of Atalanta. — <i>Bacon</i> | 145 |
| XIV. Assassination of Cæsar. — <i>Plutarch</i> | 145 |
| XV. Death of Marcus Antonius | 147 |
| XVI. Destruction of Carthage | 148 |
| XVII. Xenophon at the Sea | 149 |
| XVIII. Vercingetorix | 150 |
| XIX. A Story of Wolves | 151 |
| XX. Death of Socrates. — <i>Plato</i> | 152 |
| XXI. Hannibal in the Apennines | 155 |
| XXII. The Gauls at Rome | 156 |
| XXIII. Murder of Marcellus | 157 |
| XXIV. Story of Cincinnatus. — <i>Arnold</i> | 159 |
| XXV. Princely Generosity. — <i>Feltham</i> | 160 |
| XXVI. Defeat of Varus. — <i>Creasy</i> | 161 |
| XXVII. Siege of Syracuse. — <i>Arnold</i> | 162 |
| XXVIII. Battle of Metaurus. — <i>Arnold</i> | 163 |
| XXIX. Inundations of the Tiber. — <i>Gibbon</i> | 165 |
| XXX. First Acting at Rome. — <i>Livy</i> | 167 |
| XXXI. The Fire of London | 169 |
| XXXII. The Earthquake at Lisbon | 171 |
| XXXIII. Character of Trajan. — <i>Gibbon</i> | 174 |
| XXXIV. Character of Cato. — <i>Middleton</i> | 175 |
| XXXV. Of Studies. — <i>Bacon</i> | 176 |
| XXXVI. Antony in Defeat. — <i>North's Plutarch</i> | 178 |
| XXXVII. Speech of Antony. — <i>Shakespeare</i> | 180 |

COMPOSITION.

PART FIRST.—CONSTRUCTIONS.

Lesson 1.

The Order of Words.

READ carefully the whole of Chapter VI. (pages 258–262). Learn §§ 343, with *c, d*; and 344.

NOTE. — Though the order of words in a Latin sentence seems very arbitrary, yet it will be observed that almost every arrangement produces some effect such as must usually be given in English by emphasis or stress of voice. In the Exercises to follow, the pupil should observe the reason of any change he may make from the normal order, and the effect it has in making prominent some particular word or words. He should also acquire, as early as possible, the habit of regarding his composition *as a Latin sentence*, and not *as an English sentence turned into Latin words*. And he will be aided in this by habitually reading over the sentence *as Latin* after he has written it, to be sure that it has a Latin sound.

1. The normal or regular form of words in a Latin sentence is the following: (*a*) The Subject, followed by its modifiers; (*b*) the modifiers of the Predicate, the *direct object* being usually put last; (*c*) the Verb, preceded by any word or phrase which directly qualifies its action.

This is the order usually to be followed, where no emphasis is thrown on any particular word, as in simple narrative of fact: thus,

*Hannibal imperator factus | proximo triennio omnes
gentes Hispaniae | bello subegit.* — NEPOS, Hann. 3.

REMARK.—In actual practice, the normal order of words is rarely found. It is continually altered, either for the sake of *emphasis*,—to throw stress on the more important words; or for the sake of *euphony*,—to make the sentence more agreeable to the ear.

2. Modifiers of Nouns—as adjectives (not predicate), appositives, and oblique cases used as attributes—usually follow the noun; modifiers of Verbs—including adverbs and adverbial phrases—precede the verb. Genitives may come indifferently before or after the noun which they limit, according to emphasis.

3. In the arrangement of Clauses, the *relative clause* more often comes first in Latin, and usually contains the antecedent noun; while, in English, the *demonstrative clause* almost always precedes: as,

Quos amissimus cives, eos Martis vis perculit.—CIC.
Marc. 6. (“Those citizens whom,” &c. See examples in § 200. *b.*)

4. In contrasted phrases or clauses, either (1) the same order of words is repeated (*anaphora*), or (2) the order is reversed (*chiasmus*): as,

1. *Bellum genere necessarium magnitudine periculosum.*—id. Manil. 10.
2. *Non terrore belli, sed consilii celeritate.*—(id. 11.)

5. Almost universally the MAIN WORD of the sentence is put first (rarely last). This may be (1) simply the emphatic word, containing the idea most prominent in the writer’s mind (*emphasis*); or it may be (2) contrasted with some other word preceding or following (*antithesis*). Compare, for example, the following:—

1. *M. Brutus Ciceronis amicus Caesarem interfecit.*
2. *Amicus Ciceronis M. Brutus Caesarem interfecit.*
3. *Caesarem interfecit M. Brutus Ciceronis amicus.*

That is, “It was Cæsar,” &c.

4. *Interfecit Caesarem M. Brutus Ciceronis amicus.*

Here the emphasis is thrown on the *fact* of killing: compare —

5. *Interfectus est propter quasdam seditionum suspirationes C. Gracchus.* — CIC. Cat. 1. 2 (see the passage).

6. *Romae summum otium est.*

Here Rome is contrasted with Syria, which Cicero had just spoken of.

Lesson 2.

Rules of Agreement. — 1. Apposition.

REVIEW § 184, 185; Learn *a*, *b*, *c*.

Observe that in Latin simple apposition is often used where in English we use *as*, *of*, *when*, or even a separate clause: thus,

1. I come to help you, *adjutor tibi venio.*
2. To treat Cicero as a friend, *Cicerone amico uti.*
3. To regard the gods as immortal, *deos aeternos habere.*
4. The city of Rome, *Roma urbs.*
5. I remember seeing when a boy, *puer memini videre.*
6. Publius and Lucius Scipio, *P. et L. Scipiones.*
7. Cato used to tell in his old age, *Cato senex narrabat.*
8. Fabius in his second consulship (when he was second time consul), *Fabius consul iterum.*

N.B. In the following Exercises, words in brackets are to be omitted in the Latin.

Proper Names of the first or second declension are not given in the Vocabulary, except where the spelling is different in English.

Exercise 1.

1. The consul Caius¹ Flaminius defeated the Insubrians.² The next consuls, Scipio and Marcellus, con-

¹ Prænomens (as Caius) are always to be abbreviated (see § 80. *d*). The name must here precede the title. ² *Insubres*.

tinued the war. Marcellus slew Viridomarus, chief of the Insubrians, and Scipio his colleague took Milan, their chief town. 2. Give this message¹ to Tarquinius, your king. 3. O father Tiber, take me [into thy charge] and bear me up. 4. We have sworn together, three hundred noble youths, against Porsena. 5. Bocchus was gained over to the Roman cause by Sulla, the quæstor of Marius. 6. The consul Publius Rupilius brought the Servile War to an end by the capture of Tauromenium and Enna, the two strongholds of the insurgents. 7. Sempronia, the only sister of Tiberius Gracchus, was married to the younger Scipio Africanus. 8. The next year, Lucius Cornelius Scipio, brother of the great Africanus, and Caius Lælius, the intimate-friend of the latter,² were consuls. 9. The Illyrians were a nation of pirates. 10. The she-wolf acted [as a] mother. 11. The Academy introduced a new [branch of] knowledge [viz.] to know nothing. 12. Demetrius, an unprincipled Greek, surrendered to the Romans the important island [of] Corcyra. 13. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum, a free-town of Latium.

¹ Literally, "Report these [things]."

² *idem*.

Lesson 3.

Rules of Agreement. — 2. The Verb.

1. REVIEW § 204 (the general rule of agreement). Learn §§ 205, with *a, b* ; 206. *a, b*.

NOTE. — The correspondence of the verb with its subject (called agreement) is nearly the same in most languages, though obscured in English by the loss of the inflectional endings. The peculiarities

of Latin use are given in the sub-sections cited above. The most important of these is the regular omission of the personal pronoun of the first or second person as subject (the pronoun being contained in the verb-ending¹), also of the third person whenever it is plain from the context. Hence the rule —

2. The personal pronoun is never to be expressed in Latin, except when required for emphasis or precision.

3. A single idea is very often expressed in Latin by two nouns connected by a conjunction (*hendiadys*). In this case the singular verb is the usual form : as,

There is a continued series of events, *est continuatio et series rerum*.

4. The following examples show the most frequent Latin usages :—

1. **Fannius and Mucius came to their father-in-law, *Fannius et Mucius ad socerum venerunt*.**
2. **Neither Ælius nor Coruncanius thought so, *nec Aelius nec Coruncanius ita putabat*.**
3. **Balbus and I held up our hands, *ego et Balbus sustulimus manus*.**
4. **If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well, *si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*.**
5. **Water and earth remained, *aqua restabat et terra* (more rarely : *aqua et terra restabat*).**
6. **I say, *aiō* ; they say (people say), *aiunt*.**
7. **I strongly approve of Epicurus, for he says, &c., *Epicurum valde probo, dicit enim, etc*.**
8. **Rational instruction prescribes, *ratio et doctrina prescribit*.**

N.B. The periphrastic forms of the verb come properly under the treatment of Adjectives, and are included in the next Lesson.

¹ So sometimes in old English or in poetry : as, *Did'st ever see the like?* (Taming of the Shrew, iv. 1). So the phrases, *thank you, pray come*, &c.

Exercise 2.

1. Catulus in the Senate, and Cato in the forum, hailed Cicero [as] the father of his country. 2. Cicero calls Athens the inventress of arts. 3. The army of Hannibal lived luxuriously at Capua, a beautiful city of Campania.¹ 4. We avoid death as-if a dissolution of nature. 5. Many ancient peoples worshipped the dog and cat [as] gods. 6. The swallow, harbinger of Spring, had now appeared. 7. Marcus Manlius, the preserver of the capitol, came forward [as] the patron of the poor. 8. The censors, Crassus and Mænius, created two new tribes, the Ufentine and Falerian. 9. Quintus and I² shall set sail to-morrow; you and Tiro will wait [for] us in the harbor. 10. Honor and shame from no condition rise. 11. To you, [my] son Marcus, belongs the inheritance of my glory and the imitation of my deeds. 12. Never is danger overcome without danger, as they say. 13. The exigency³ of the occasion³ demands severity. 14. The mad-scheme of Saturninus and the discredit of Marius gave-new-strength⁴ to the Senate.

¹ See § 184. *b*.² In Latin, "I and Quintus."³ Two words with *et*.⁴ *Confirmo*.

Lesson 4.

Rules of Agreement.—3. Adjectives.

1. LEARN § 186 (the general rule of agreement); also sub-section *d*, and § 187, with *a*, *b*.

NOTE.—As adjectives are not inflected at all in English, the beginner is required to pay constant attention to the rule. The only special difficulties likely to arise are when the same adjective belongs to two nouns, especially when these are of different genders. As to these, the principles stated 187, with *a* and *b*, will in general be a sufficient guide.

2. The participial forms in the compound tenses, as well as other participles, are treated in construction as adjectives : as,

1. Cæsar and Bibulus were elected consuls, *Caesar et Bibulus consules creati sunt.*
2. Tullia is dead (or died), *Tullia mortua est.*
3. Both consuls were slain, *uterque consul occisus est.*
4. Virginus and his daughter were left alone before the judgment-seat, *Virginus et filia ejus soli ante tribunal relictæ sunt.*
5. The wife and little son of Regulus embraced him as he departed, *Regulum discedentem uxor et parvus filius amplexi sunt.*

Exercise 3.

1. Brutus, the deliverer of his country, and Collatinus the husband of Lucretia, were chosen first consuls at Rome. 2. Disunion and distrust were created among the allies by the Julian law. 3. Herculaneum and Pompeii¹ have been preserved to our times. 4. The entire Senate and Roman people went out to meet² Cicero on his return from exile. 5. All sensible [people] had become alarmed at the mad-conduct of Saturninus. 6. Valerius commanding the foot, and Brutus being appointed to head the cavalry, went out to meet Tarquinon³ the Roman borders. 7. My uncle and myself, having returned to Misenum, passed an anxious and doubtful night. 8. Manlius during-his-absence⁴ had been elected consul a second time. 9. Pompey, having marched into Syria, deposed Antiochus, and made the country a [Roman] province. 10. The conspiracy against Caesar's life was set-on-foot by Caius Cassius Longinus, an enemy [of] his.

¹ Supply *urbes* in apposition.

² Lesson 17, *h.* Rem.

³ *Obviam* with dative, following *egredi*.

⁴ *absens*.

11. Mantua, alas! too near unhappy Cremona.¹
 12. You have before your eyes Catiline, the most audacious of men. 13. Aurora opens the purple doors and the courts full of roses. 14. A boar is often held by a small² dog. 15. The wall was common to³ both houses, and was cleft by⁴ a narrow chink. 16. Lepidus [was] defeated near the Mulvian bridge by Catulus [and] sailed with the remainder of his forces to Sardinia.

¹ Dative. ² *non magnus*. ³ Genitive. ⁴ Ablative.

Lesson 5.

Adjectives: Special Uses.

I. REVIEW §§ 186, 187; learn §§ 188, 189. *a*, *b* (adjectives used as nouns), with 190, 191, 193, 203.

Under these heads occur many common phrases, in which the Latin usage must be carefully distinguished from the English: as,

1. I saw Scipio in his lifetime, *Scipionem vivum vidi*.
2. He came against his will, *invitus venit*.
3. Every thing was safe, *omnia tuta erant*.
4. All of us are here, *omnes adsumus*.
5. He was the first to see (he saw first), *primus vidit*.
6. On the top of a tree, *in summa arbore*.
7. The inner part of the house, *interior domus*.
8. The rest of the crowd remained, *reliqua multitudo manebat*.

NOTE. — The use of adjectives as nouns is most common in the masculine plural, just as in English *the wise, the brave*, &c. In the singular this use is rare, except with a few words which have become practically nouns, such as *familiaris*, *an intimate friend*; *sapiens*, *a wise man*; *avarus*, *a miser*, and with neuters as in 4. *a*. In other cases the noun is generally expressed; and almost always when a feminine or neuter would be used. Hence —

2. When any ambiguity would arise from the use of the adjective alone, a noun must be added: as,

1. **Boni, the good; omnia, every thing.**
2. **All [men] must die, omnibus moriendum est.** But —
3. **A good man, vir bonus.**
4. **Power over every thing, potentia omnium rerum.**

3. When any other case is used than the nominative or accusative, the noun is more commonly expressed, even when not required for distinctness.

4. An abstract notion is very often expressed in Latin by an adjective in the neuter plural: thus,

1. **All men praise bravery, omnes fortia laudant.**
2. **The past at least is secure, praeterita saltem tuta sunt.**
3. **Choose the better part, elige meliora.**
4. **Fleeting good, bona caduca.**
5. **Pleasing ill, mala blanda.**

5. Adjectives are often used in Latin where in English we use the possessive, or a noun and preposition: as,

1. **The fight at Cannae, pugna Cannensis.**
2. **Caius Blossius of Cumae, C. Blossius Cumanus.**
3. **Another man's house, aliena domus.**

NOTE. — These adjectives most commonly represent the genitive, and will be treated in Lesson 15, *b*.

Exercise 4.

1. Duillius was-the-first¹ of the Romans to¹ conquer in a naval battle; Curius Dentatus first led elephants in a triumph. 2. Right and wrong are by nature opposed to-each-other.² 3. After [his] exile Scipio passed the-rest-of his life at Liternum, a small town of Latium. 4. Demosthenes, the Athenian orator, being banished from his country on³ a false charge

¹ Simple adjective.

² *Inter se*.

³ *Ob*.

of having received money¹ from Harpalus, was-in-exile at Megara.² He [was] afterwards recalled [and] returned [to] Athens in a ship sent for that [purpose]. 5. Octavia and Livia, the one the sister of Augustus, the other [his] wife, had lost [their] sons, the³ [famous] young Marcellus and Drusus Germanicus. 6. The aged senators who-had-been-consuls⁴ or censors⁴ sat in the Forum on [their] curule chairs, awaiting death. The Gauls found the city deserted; but marching on they came to the Forum, where they beheld the old men sitting immovable like beings⁵ of⁶ another⁶ world.⁶ For some time they stood⁷ in-awe-at⁸ the strange sight, till one of the Gauls ventured to go up to Marcus Papius and stroke his white beard. The old man smote him on the head with⁹ [his] ivory staff; then the barbarian slew him, and all the rest were massacred.

¹ Lit. "of money received." ² *Megaræ* or *is*. ³ *ille*.

⁴ Adjectives. ⁵ *forma ac natura*. ⁶ *de caelo delapsus*.

⁷ *Obstipesco*. ⁸ *admirans* followed by acc. ⁹ Ablative.

Lesson 6.

Pronouns.—1. Personal and Reflexive.

1. REVIEW §§ 98 (the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns); and 99. *a, b, c* (Possessive adjectives), *d, e*. Observe that the pronouns have almost precisely the same syntax as nouns.

2. The Latin never uses the plural of the second person (**vos**) for the singular *you*; but often the plural of the first person (**nos**) for the singular *I*.

3. Of the double forms in the genitive plural, the form in **um** is partitive, while that in **i** is objective: thus,

1. The elder of us, *major nostrum*.

2. Mindful of us, *memor nostri*.

4. The Reflexive pronoun (**se**), with its corresponding Possessive (**suis**), is used in some part of the *predicate*, always referring to the subject of the sentence or clause (read the whole of 196).

NOTE. — In such cases we generally (not always) use *self*, *selves*, and *own*. These accordingly are not necessary in Latin, — except when they are emphatic, — being expressed by the reflexive or the personal pronoun (**me**, **te**, &c.) : —

1. Virtue knows itself, *Virtus se novit*.
2. Brutus slew his friend, *Brutus amicum [suum] occidit* (his own friend, *suum amicum*).
3. Philosophy has much pleasure in it, *Philosophia multum habet in se delectationis*.

5. The Possessives (like other adjectives) take the gender, number, and case of the noun they are used with, not of the one they refer to. They are regularly omitted when they are plainly implied (see § 197).

Exercise 5.

1. Bulls defend themselves by [their] horns, boars by their tusks,¹ [and] lions by their teeth and claws.
2. Horatius slew his sister with his own hand.
3. "Young man," said Sulla, "you have strengthened your rival against yourself." 4. "Varus, Varus," cried Augustus, "give me ² back my legions." 5. Crassus, indeed, has defeated the enemy; but I have exterminated them root-and-branch. 6. "Who art thou," said Brutus, "and for what purpose art-thou-come?"³ "I am thy evil genius,"⁴ Brutus, replied the spectre; "thou shalt see me to-morrow at Philippi." 7. Cicero was accustomed to write down his orations. 8. Few men know their own faults and vices. 9. How long a letter I have written to you with my own hand!

¹ *ictus dentium*.

² Dative.

³ Perfect active.

⁴ *Furia*.

10. Ancus Martius instituted the college of Herald's; he also founded a colony at Ostia, at the mouth of the Tiber, and built a fortress on the Janiculum. 11. Very agreeable to me is your remembrance of me (plur.).

Lesson 7.

Pronouns. — 2. Demonstrative.

1. REVIEW § 100, and learn carefully the sub-sections 102. *a* to *e* (use of the Demonstratives).

NOTE. — These Demonstratives are used much like the corresponding words in English, *this*, *that*, &c. Observe, however, that though they run into one another in meaning, yet regularly **hic**, **ille**, **iste**, are true demonstratives, and actually point to something: while **is** (the pronoun of reference) only refers without pointing out. Thus *a*, *a man*, *the man*, *one (who)*, &c., are often rendered by **is** with **qui** following.

2. The Possessives *his*, *hers*, *its*, *theirs*, are expressed by the genitive of a demonstrative, and have no difference of gender in the singular.

3. When the word *that* is used instead of repeating a word before expressed, it is regularly omitted in Latin. But when *a distinct object* is referred to, it may be expressed by **ille**, **hic**, or even **is**; or the noun itself may be repeated. Thus, —

1. I prefer the art of memory to that of forgetfulness, *memoriae artem quam oblivionis malo.*
2. Virtue seeks no other reward except this [of which I have just spoken] of glory, *nullam virtus aliam mercedem desiderat praeter hanc laudis.* — CIC. Arch. 11.

NOTE. — In such cases, the Latin often prefers some possessive adjective or other construction (see hereafter, Lesson 15): as,

The army of Cæsar defeated that of Pompey at Pharsalus, *Caesaris exercitus Pompeianos ad Pharsalum vicit.*

4. Contrary to the English usage, **hic** is generally used to refer to a preceding statement or example; **ille** to a following one: as,

That [which I have just mentioned] **is** a great argument, but **this is** a greater: [namely] **that, etc., hoc magnum est argumentum, sed illud majus, quod, etc.**

5. **Hic** often corresponds with our *here, the present*; **ille** to our *there*; and **iste**, *yonder (by you)*: as,

1. **Caius Cæsar** here, **hic C. Cæsar**.

2. **Those benches yonder (by you)**, **ista subsellia**.

3. **The present (now living) Mucius Scævola**, **hic Mucius Scævola**.

6. The demonstrative pronoun regularly agrees in gender and number with a predicate appositive if there is one (§ 195. *d*): as,

This is the toil, this the task, **hic labor hoc opus est**.

7. The intensive **ipse** is usually put in the case of the subject, even where the real emphasis appears to be on the object (see § 195. *f* to *l*): as,

1. **You praise yourself over much**, **ipse te nimium laudas**.

2. **This thing is sufficient in itself**, **haec res per se ipsa satis est**.

N.B. — The distinction between the intensive **ipse** and the reflexive **se** — both rendered in English by “*self*” — requires to be carefully observed (see § 102. *e*, N.). **Ipse** often expresses *even, very, or just*: as,

1. **This very thing**, **hoc ipsum**.

2. **It is just three years**, **tres anni ipsi sunt**.

Exercise 6.

1. Æneas carried with him into Italy his son Ascanius and the sacred Penates of-Troy.¹ He was kindly received by Latinus, king of the country, and married

¹ Adjective.

his daughter Lavinia. 2. All philosophers, and among them Epictetus, were banished from Rome by Domitian. 3. The ancients regard this [as] true riches, this [as] a good reputation and great renown. 4. While¹ all arrogance is hateful, at-the-same-time¹ that of genius and eloquence is by-far the most offensive. 5. Diseases of the mind are more dangerous than those of the body. 6. The self-same Cato, the Censor, thus discourses in that very book of Cicero on Old Age. 7. When I listen-to Cicero, I desire to write down his orations, so greatly they delight me. 8. Romulus killed with his own hand Acron, king of Cænina, and dedicated his arms to Jupiter. 9. Upon² the death of Numa an interregnum again followed; but soon after Tullus Hostilius was elected king. His reign was as warlike as that of Numa had been peaceful. 10. Servius, the sixth king of Rome, gave his two daughters in marriage to the two sons of Tarquinius Priscus, Lucius and Aruns. The former was proud and haughty; the latter, unambitious and quiet. 11. This was the third and last attempt [on the part] of the Tarquini; for by this victory⁵ the Latins were completely humbled, and Tarquinius Superbus could apply to no other state for assistance. He had already survived all his family,³ and he now fled to-Cumæ,⁴ where he died a wretched and childless old man.

¹ *cum . . . tum.* ² Ablative. ³ Dative. ⁴ Accusative.

⁵ Use *clades* (see p. 121, *cc*).

Lesson 8.

Pronouns. — 3. Relative.

I. REVIEW § 198 (the rule of agreement), reading the introductory Note; together with §§ 199, 201. *e*.

NOTE. — A relative word used as in English, merely to introduce a descriptive fact, is as simple in construction as a demonstrative, and requires no special rule. Several classes of relative clauses in which the mood of the verb is affected (§§ 317–320) will be treated hereafter.

N.B. — Relative words include relative Pronouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs; with the indefinites **quisquis** and **quicumque**, *whoever*.

2. The relative is never to be omitted in Latin, though it often is in English. Thus, —

1. The book you gave me, *liber quem mihi dedisti*.
2. I am the man I always was, *is sum qui semper fui*.
3. He is in the place I told you of, *eo in loco est de quo tibi locutus sum*.

3. The relative is often used in Latin where other constructions are used in English; particularly where we should use a participle, appositive, or noun of agency: as,

1. The book entitled Brutus, *liber qui dicitur Brutus*.
2. The existing laws, *leges quae nunc sunt*.
3. The men of our day, *homines qui nunc sunt*.
4. Cæsar the conqueror of Gaul, *Caesar qui Galliam vicit*.
5. True glory the fruit of virtue, *justa gloria qui est fructus virtutis*.

4. In formal or emphatic discourse, it is often better to place the relative clause first; and in such cases it usually contains the antecedent noun: as,

Those evils which we suffer with many seem to us lighter,
quae mala cum multis patimur ea nobis leviora videntur.

5. When the antecedent noun is in apposition with the main clause or some word in it, it is to be put in the relative clause: as,

Steadfast friends, a class of which there is great lack, *firmi amici, cujus generis est magna penuria*.

6. A relative is constantly used in Latin when English uses a demonstrative with *and* or *but*: as,

1. And since these things are so, *quae cum ita sint*.
2. But if they hesitate or are unwilling, *qui si dubitabunt aut gravabuntur*.

7. When the word AS is used in English as a relative, it must be rendered in Latin by the relative pronoun, adjective, or adverb which corresponds to its demonstrative antecedent: as,

1. The same thing as, *eadem res quae*.
2. Such (men) as, *ei qui*.
3. Such a leader as we know Hannibal to have been, *talis dux qualem Hannibalem novimus*.
4. There were as many opinions as men, *quot homines tot erant sententiae*.

Exercise 7.

1. Tiberius Gracchus was by birth ¹ and marriage ² connected with the noblest families in the Republic: grandson of the conqueror of Hannibal, son-in-law of the chief of the Senate, and brother-in-law of the destroyer ³ of Carthage. 2. Quintus Silo, a Marsian, and Caius Papius Mutilus, a Samnite, who cherished an hereditary hatred against the Romans, were chosen consuls. 3. Sulla with his army was then besieging Nola, a town which was still held by the Samnites. 4. Rome was now exposed to great danger; for those who had been her most faithful friends now rose against her. 5. A day shall come when ⁴ sacred Troy shall perish. 6. The terms which the general proposed seemed intolerable to the Carthaginians. 7. Tiberius and Caius Gracchus were the sons of Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, whose measures gave tranquillity

¹ *Propinquitās* (plur.).

² *Adfinitas* (plur.).

³ Lit. "of him who destroyed."

⁴ Repeat the noun.

to Spain for ¹ so many years. They lost their father at ² an early ³ age. But they were educated with the utmost care by their mother Cornelia, the daughter of Scipio Africanus the elder, who had inherited from [her] father a love ⁴ of literature, and united ⁵ in her person ⁶ the severe virtue of the Roman matron with a superior knowledge ⁷ and refinement, which ⁸ then prevailed ⁹ in ¹⁰ the higher-classes ¹¹ at-Rome. ¹² She engaged for [her] sons the most eminent Greek teachers; and from the pains she took ¹³ with ¹⁴ their education they surpassed all the Roman youths of their age.

¹ *per.*² Ablative.³ *primus.*⁴ *studium.*⁵ *habeo conjunctam.*⁶ *se.*⁷ *doctrina.*⁸ Neuter plural.⁹ *floreo.*¹⁰ *apud.*¹¹ *nobiles.*¹² Adjective.¹³ "Take pains," *operam dare.*¹⁴ Dative.

Lesson 9.

Pronouns: Interrogative and Indefinite.

REVIEW §§ 104, 106, with *a* (forms of Interrogative Pronoun). These forms, including *quisnam* (emphatic), and *uter* (see § 83, and *a*), are used much as in English. Thus, —

1. Who is the man? *Quis est homo?*

2. What a man he was! *Qui homo erat!*

3. What do you find fault with? *Quid reprehendis?*

4. What plan of his do you find fault with? *Quod consilium ejus reprehendis?*

5. Which eye aches? *Uter oculus dolet?*

6. Which finger hurts? *Qui digitus dolet?*

7. Who is it? (emph.)

8. Who in the world

~ (pray who) is it?

} *Quisnam est? Quis tandem est?*

(The latter a little stronger.)

2. REVIEW § 105. *c, d, e, h* (forms and use of the Indefinites) ; study the whole of § 202.

a. The pronouns which correspond to the English **A** or **SOME**, **ONE**, or **ANY** (indefinite, not emphatic) are **quis**, **quispiam**, **aliquis**, **quidam**. Of these **quis** is the least definite, and **quidam** the most. When **SOME** is used of objects *defined in thought* though not named, it is regularly **quidam**. The expressions **nonnullus**, **nonnemo**, **nonnihil** are somewhat less definite than **quidam**. **Quis** is the regular word after **si**, **nisi**, **ne**, **num**, to signify *if any*, &c. With these particles **aliquis** is more definite, like our *if some one*, &c. A **FEW** or **SEVERAL** may be expressed by **aliquot**, **nonnulli**, **plures**; **pauci** (restrictive) means *only a few*. The English **ANY ONE WHO** is often best rendered by **si quis** (See Note, Gr. p. 227).

1. **Some one may say**, *aliquis dicat (dixerit quispiam).*
2. **Some philosophers think so**, *aliqui* (or, if definite persons are thought of, *quidam*) *philosophi ita putant.*
3. **Some poor women live here**, *habitant hic quaedam mulieres pauperculae.* [That is, some women he knows; some women or other would be *aliquae* or *nescio quae.*]
4. **Up runs a man**, *accurrit quidam.*
5. **I will call in a few friends**, *aliquot amicos adhibebo.*
6. **In the very senate-house there is more than one enemy**, *in ipsa curia nonnemo hostis est.*
7. **Banished not on some other charge but this very one**, *expulsus non alio aliquo sed eo ipso crimine.*
8. **He neither denies nor asserts a thing**, *neque negat aliquid neque ait* (any thing whatever would be *quidquam*).

b. The pronouns which correspond most nearly with the English **ANY** (emphatic) are **quisquam** (substantive), **ullus** (adjective), **quivis**, and **quilibet**. The first two are used chiefly with negatives (but see § 202. *b, c*) ; the other two are universal (*any you like*). When only two are spoken of, **EITHER** is **uter** (corresponding to **quisquam**), **utervis**, **uterlibet** (corresponding to **quivis** and **quilibet**). For the negatives **non quisquam**, **non ullus**, **non quidquam**, **non uter**, use **nemo**, **nullus**, **nihil**, **neuter**.

1. **What can happen to any (one) man can happen to any man (whatever)**, *cuius potest accidere quod cuiquam potest.*

2. I never did any thing worse, *numquam quidquam feci pejus* (better, *nihil umquam*).
3. Why did I send to anybody before you? *cur cuiquam misi prius?*
4. I have less strength than either one of you, *minus habeo virium quam vestrum utervis*.
5. No one thinking of any thing but flight, *nemo ullius rei nisi fugae memor*.

c. The Distributives EACH, EVERY, are expressed by *quisque* (*uterque*, if there are only two). *Unusquisque* is more emphatic (*every single one*). *Omnis* is sometimes used in the singular in nearly the same sense as *quisque*, but more indefinitely, and is almost equivalent to a plural.

1. Every good book is better the larger it is, *bonus liber melior est quisque, quo major*.
2. Both armies go away every man to his home, *ambo exercitus suas quisque abeunt domos*.
3. Each army was in sight of the other, *uterque utrique erat exercitus in conspectu*.
4. Every system of instruction (= all systems of instruction), *omnis ratio et doctrina*.

Exercise 8.

1. Which do you consider the greatest general, Cæsar, Scipio, or Hannibal? Which the better orator, Cicero or Demosthenes? 2. "We here bring you war and peace," said the Roman ambassadors in the Senate of the Carthaginians; "which pleases you best?" 3. Pompey obtained the highest dignity in the State — that of the consulship — without any recommendation of ancestors. 4. The vices of Alcibiades were redeemed by some brilliant qualities. 5. Most men's vices are redeemed by some better qualities. 6. No¹ great man was ever without some divine inspiration. 7. Horace did not read his poetry to any one except friends; and then² under compulsion, not everywhere,

¹ *nemo*.

² Lit. "and that."

nor before¹ everybody [indiscriminately]. 8. Some skill² as an orator³ is necessary to a commander. 9. Several of the allies of Sparta were dissatisfied with the peace she had concluded; and soon after some of them determined to⁴ restore the ancient power of Argos. 10. Some slight battles occurred, in which the side⁵ of-the-Syracusans⁶ had the advantage.⁷ 11. Since Agamemnon, no Grecian king had led an army into Asia. 12. It is contrary-to nature to take⁸ any thing from any other⁹ [person]. Does any one deny this? 13. Whoever had killed a tyrant was praised by the Greeks and Romans. Thus Harmodius, who expelled the sons of Pisistratus, was honored at Athens; Timoleon, who consented-to¹⁰ the death of his brother Timophanes, at Corinth; and Brutus, the slayer of Julius Cæsar, at Rome.

¹ *Coram* with abl. ² Lit. "Something of skill." ³ Adjective.

⁴ Infinitive. ⁵ *res*. ⁶ Adjective. ⁷ Lit. "was superior."

⁸ *detraho*.

⁹ Dative.

¹⁰ *probo*.

Lesson 10.

Cases. — 1. As Objects of Verbs.

1. REVIEW §§ 237, with *b*, *c* (Accusative as Direct Object); 225, 227, with *a*, *b*, 228 (Dative as Indirect Object); 219, 220, 221 (Genitive as the object of verbs of Memory and Feeling); and 249 (Ablative of means, with *utor*, etc.).

2. All of the above cases are used in Latin with different classes of verbs to represent the English Objective case. Thus:—

1. I see the man, *hominem video* (ACCUSATIVE).

2. I help the man, *homini subvenio* (DATIVE).

3. I pity the man, *hominis misereor* (GENITIVE).

4. I treat the man as a friend, *homine amico utor* (ABLATIVE).

REMARK. — In all the above examples the verb is transitive in English, but not really so in Latin. In deciding on the case to be used as the object of any given verb, the following points are to be observed : —

a. The Accusative, as the case of Direct Object, is far more general in its use than either of the others ; and may be assumed to represent the English Objective, except as limited by the special rules which follow.

b. The Dative is to be used, along with the Accusative, wherever in English two object-cases follow, with one of which we may use the preposition TO or FOR (except after verbs of Asking and Teaching, which take two accusatives) : as,

1. He gave me the book (= he gave the book to me), *mihi librum dedit.*
2. I promise you a fig, *tibi ficum promitto.* But —
3. He asked me for money, *pecuniam me rogavit.*
4. Plato taught his scholars geometry, *Plato discipulos suos geometriam docuit.*

The Dative is also to be used after the verbs (apparently transitive) given in the lists in §§ 227, 228, 229. These sub-sections, with the accompanying examples and remarks, must be attentively studied ; as an accurate knowledge of these classes of verbs is absolutely essential to the correct use of the language in one of the commonest constructions in Latin.

c. Verbs governing the Genitive in Latin are few, and belong to the strictly limited classes given in the sub-sections under § 219, &c. They are chiefly verbs of Memory and Feeling (with *egere*, *indigere*, *need*). The genitive of Charge and Penalty corresponds with the English use of the preposition OF.

d. The only verbs governing the Ablative in Latin, corresponding to transitives in English, are the few deponents given above, § 249 : either of them may easily be represented in English by a phrase with a preposition : as,

1. I use (make use of) a sword, *gladio utor.*
2. He eats (feeds on) flesh, *carne vescitur.*
3. They abuse (take advantage of) my friendship, *amicitia mea abutuntur.*

Exercise 9.

1. In our own calamity, we remember the calamities of others. 2. I shall never forget that day: it reminds me at-once¹ of the greatest delight and¹ greatest peril of² my life. 3. Pity the sorrows of a poor old man. 4. Bocchus, king of Mauretania, had-pity-on the condition of his son-in-law, Jugurtha, king of Numidia, and promised him aid; but afterwards, calling-to-mind³ the greater power of the Romans, betrayed him to Sulla, the quæstor of Caius Marius. 5. The Italians loudly demanded the rights which had been promised them by Drusus. 6. Cæsar forgave all those who had fought on the side of Pompey in the civil war. 7. Marius commanded a separate army in the neighborhood. 8. If a patrician man married a plebeian wife, or a patrician woman a plebeian husband, the State did not recognize the marriage. 9. Dentatus had accompanied the triumphs of nine generals. As tribune of the people, he most bitterly opposed the patricians. 10. The Knights abused the judicial power, as the Senate had done before. 11. He who commands the sea is lord of affairs. 12. After the Mithridatic war, Pompey, [though] only a private-citizen, performed the part of a commander, levied three legions, and having gained⁴ a brilliant victory⁴ was received by Sulla with the greatest distinction. 13. Marcus Livius Drusus, like his father, favored the side of the nobles. But he had promised the Latins and allies the Roman franchise, a measure which had always displeased the Roman people, and which they violently resisted. Drusus, therefore, had recourse to sedition and conspiracy. A secret-society

¹ *cum . . . tum.* ² *in.* ³ *memor,* with *gen.* ⁴ *Abl. abs. Passive.*

was formed, which was bound by oath to obey¹ his commands. The ferment increased, and threatened the safety² of the State; but at last Drusus was assassinated in his own house.²

¹ Acc. and infin.

² *domi suae.*

³ Lit. *danger* or *destruction*, with dat.

Lesson II.

Cases. — 2. As Modifying Adjectives.

1. REVIEW §§ 218. *a, b, c, d* (Genitive with Adjectives); 234. *a* (Dative of Fitness, &c.); 243. *d*, 244. *a*, 245. *a*, 248. *c*, 253, 254. *b*.

N. B. These rules include many participles, which are used like adjectives.

2. Adjectives in English almost always require phrases with prepositions when their meaning is to be limited or explained. In Latin this is generally done by using after the adjective the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative case without a preposition.

NOTE. — Some particular adjectives — rather than classes — take a preposition, as in English. These will be treated hereafter, in the Lesson on Prepositions (see § 234. *b, c*).

a. Relative Adjectives — that is, adjectives whose quality naturally relates to some object, especially one which corresponds to the object of a transitive verb — regularly take the Genitive. This relation is often expressed in English by the preposition OF: as,

1. Mindful of others, forgetful of himself, *memor aliorum oblitus sui.*
2. Disdaining letters, *fastidiosus literarum.*
3. Possessed of reason and judgment, *compos rationis et iudicii.*
4. Sharing in the booty, *particeps praeda.*

See also examples under § 218. *a, b, c.*

b. Where the relation between the adjective and noun would be expressed in English by the preposition TO or FOR, it is commonly expressed in Latin by the Dative. The chief exceptions are given in § 234. *b, c, d, e.* (See constructions given in the Dictionary under each word.)

1. A battle very like a flight, *pugna simillima fugae.*
2. A man hateful to many, *homo odiosus multis.*
3. Times hostile to virtue, *tempora infesta virtuti.*
4. Adjoining the Belgians, *finitimi Belgis.*
5. A law advantageous to the state, *lex utilis rei publicae.*

c. When the modifying phrase denotes that *in respect to which* the meaning of the adjective is taken — where the English uses IN, IN REGARD TO, or the like ; sometimes OF — the Ablative is generally used in Latin : as,

1. Lame of one foot, *claudus altero pede.*
2. A man distinguished in war, *vir bello egregius.*
3. Worthy of praise, *dignus laude.*

NOTE. — In this use the Ablative and Genitive approach each other in meaning ; but the Ablative generally expresses a remoter and the Genitive a closer relation. The same relation is often expressed by the Accusative with *ad*.

Exercise 10.

1. Oil rubbed-upon¹ the body makes it more capable of enduring heat, cold, or hardship. 2. Numa instituted a college of priests, four in number. 3. The fifth king of Rome was an Etruscan by birth, but a Greek by descent. 4. The reign of Servius Tullius is almost as barren of military exploits as that of Numa. 5. Wild beasts are not only devoid of reason and speech, but ungovernable² in fury, and impatient of control. 6. A Roman patrician had a-number-of³ clients attached to him, to whom he acted as patron.

¹ *inunctus*, with the dative.

² *impotens*, with genitive.

³ *quidam*.

7. Mucius, ignorant of the person¹ of Porsena, killed his secretary instead of the king himself. 8. Veii was closely allied with Fidenæ. 9. The Pentri inhabited the Apennines. But, not content with their mountain homes,² they overran the rich lands of Campania. 10. The season of the year was favorable to Hasdrubal, and the Gauls were friendly to his cause. 11. The Roman ambassadors, forgetting their sacred character,³ fought in the ranks⁴ of Clusium. 12. At the beginning of the first Punic war, the Romans had no fleet worthy of the name.⁵ 13. Porsena, alarmed for his life, offered terms of peace to the Romans. 14. Cneius Pompey was extremely ambitious of power and glory, and jealous of the superior merit and fame of other men. 15. The Romans were like the Spartans in⁶ [their] passion for⁷ military glory and empire. 16. The poet Archias, a man endowed with genius and virtue, was regarded by Cicero [as] equal to the most learned of the Greeks, and worthy of the highest praise.⁸

¹ *facies*. ² *sedes*. ³ *officium*. ⁴ *acies Clusina* (sing.).
⁵ *id nomen*. ⁶ Ablative. ⁷ Genitive. ⁸ Plural.

Lesson 12.

Cases. — 3. Indirect Relations.

REVIEW §§ 224 to 230; 231, 233, 235 (Dative of Indirect Object, of Possession, of Service, of Reference); also § 222 (*refert* and *interest*).

a. The most common use of TO or FOR in English is represented in Latin by the Dative of Indirect Object: as,

1. The province fell by lot to Cicero, *provincia Ciceroni obtigit*.

2. I consult for the safety of the state, *civitatis saluti consulo.*
3. Medicine is sometimes bad for the health, *medicina valetudini nonnumquam nocet.*

NOTE. — 1. These should be distinguished from the cases where the *direct effect* of an action is spoken of: as,

The dust hurts my eye, *pulvis oculum meum laedit.*

2. The dative of indirect object must also be carefully distinguished from the cases — apparently the same in English — where TO or FOR expresses the *limit of motion*. In Latin all relations of place, *where, whence, or whither*, are regularly expressed by means of prepositions (see hereafter, Lesson 17).

b. This construction (dative of indirect object) is used in many cases to express WITH, OVER, UPON, IN, BEFORE, AGAINST, where in the Latin expression a verb compounded with a preposition is used (see list in § 228: *ad, ante, con, &c.*):

1. A rock hung over his head, *saxum capiti impendebat.*
2. I agree with Zeno, *Zenoni adsentior.*
3. I set myself against all his plans, *omnibus ejus consiliis obstiti.*

N. B. — Particular attention must be given to the meaning and construction of each of these compounds in the vocabulary, as many of them are transitive and take the accusative (See p. 44): as,
He besieged the city of Alesia, *urbem Alesiam obsidebat.*

c. The English verb TO HAVE is often, by a Latin idiom, expressed by the Dative with *esse* (compare Rem. under § 231): as,

1. I have a father at home, *est mihi pater domi.*
2. The boy's name is Marcus, *puero nomen est Marcus* (or *Marco*).

d. The phrases *it belongs to, it is the part of*, and the like, are most commonly expressed in Latin by the Genitive with *esse*: as,
It is the part of wisdom (of a wise man), or, it is wise, *est sapientis* (compare *d*, with Remark).

e. TO or FOR is also expressed by the Dative when the object is still more remotely connected with the action, so that the sentence is complete without it (dative of reference): as,

The good husbandman plants trees for his posterity, *posteris suis serit arbores bonus agricola* (compare the examples in § 235. and *a*).

f. When FOR or OF expresses the purpose or end of an action, the Latin idiom has the dative, often with the dative of indirect object also: as,

1. Cæsar sent three cohorts for a guard, *Caesar tres cohortes praesidio misit*.
2. It was of great service to our men, *magno usui nostris fuit*.

NOTE. — In English the same relation is often expressed by simple apposition or by the conjunction AS. In Latin this construction is limited to a few words, which must be learned by practice (see examples and Note 1 under § 233).

g. For the cases in which TO or FOR is expressed by the genitive with *refert* and *interest*, see § 222. *a*, *b*. The phrase *for my sake and the republic's* is expressed by *meā et reipublicae causā*.

Exercise 11.

1. The troops of Sulla did no injury to the towns or fields of the Italians. 2. Tiberius Gracchus relied chiefly on the country-people. 3. Both Quintus Catulus and Hortensius were-opponents-of¹ the Gabinian Law. 4. On² the arrival of Pompey, Tigranes was obliged to look-to-the-safety-of³ his own power. 5. The great-numbers⁴ of the enemy were a hindrance rather than a help to them. 6. Cæsar's death was undoubtedly a loss not only to the Roman people, but to the whole world. 7. To the modern reader the elegies of Propertius are not so attractive as those of Tibullus. 8. The greatest danger Rome had experienced since the time of Hannibal was now impending over the State. 9. The consulship fell to Cneius Octavius, who belonged to the aristocratic-party,⁵ and Lucius Cinna, a professed champion of the people.

¹ *obsisto*. ² Ablative. ³ *prospicio*. ⁴ *multitudo*. ⁵ *optimates*.

To their¹ election² Sulla made-no-opposition,³ for it was his own interest to quit Italy immediately. 10. The Gauls once attacked the camp of⁴ Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, [as he was] wintering in Gaul; but Cæsar came to his assistance with two legions, and rescued him. 11. A servant of the consul Opimius, pushing against Gracchus, insolently cried out, "Make way for honest men, you rascals!" 12. "Stand aside young man," said Cæsar to the tribune Metellus, who vainly attempted to defend the treasury; "it is easier for me to do than say." 13. Damophilus, a wealthy man-of-Enna, had treated his slaves with-excessive-barbarity.⁵ They consulted a Syrian slave, whose name was Ennus, who belonged-to⁶ another master. This Ennus pretended-to⁷ the gift-of-prophecy,⁸ and appeared to breathe flames-of-fire. He not only promised them success, but joined in the enterprise himself. 14. "Mother," exclaimed Coriolanus, "thine is the victory, a happy victory for thee, but shame and ruin to thy son."

¹ Relative. ² *petitio*. ³ *non obsistere*. ⁴ Dative.

⁵ Adverb in superlative. ⁶ *servio*. ⁷ *sibi adrogare*.

⁸ *vis divina*.

Lesson 13.

Cases. — 4. Cause, Means, and Quality.

REVIEW §§ 246, 248 (Ablative of Agent and Means); 251 with 215 (ablative and genitive of Quality); 252 with *a* (Price and Value: compare 215. *c*); 245 (ablative of Cause), with *a*, *b*, *c*.

a. The means, instrument, or agent by which any thing is done we commonly express in English by the preposition BY or WITH. In Latin a distinction is made between the *voluntary agent* (expressed by the ablative with *ab*); *a person considered as an*

instrument or means (expressed by *per* with the accusative); and the *means or instrument* (expressed by the ablative alone, or in special cases by *per* with the accusative). Thus —

1. **Cæsar was informed by the ambassadors, *Caesar certior factus est a legatis.***
2. **Cæsar was informed by ambassadors (i. e. by means of ambassadors), *Caesar certior factus est per legatos.***
3. **Cæsar was informed by letter, *Caesar certior factus est literis* (or *per literas* if the letters were official documents used expressly as means of information).**

b. The English *ON ACCOUNT OF, FOR, FROM, FOR THE SAKE OF, THROUGH*, denoting *cause, occasion, or motive*, though oftenest expressed by the ablative alone, are frequently also rendered by prepositions: as,

1. **It happened through my fault, *mea culpa accidit.***
2. **On account of the pleasure from conversation I delight in entertainments, *propter sermonis delectationem conviviis delector.***
3. **We love the good for their virtues, *bonos diligimus propter virtutes* (so *pro meritis*).**
4. **He could not speak for grief, *loqui prae maerore non potuit.***

So the phrases: — *ex quo, on which account; ex eo quod, for the reason that; per aetatem, by reason of age; quam ob rem, wherefore.* See also Lesson 18.

c. A Quality is very often expressed in English by a noun with the preposition *OF*: as, *a man of worth, a tale of horror*. In Latin an adjective must be used in such cases, except when the noun of quality has an adjective connected with it, when it may be put either in the genitive or ablative: generally the latter when the noun describes a physical trait. Thus —

1. **A man of valor, *vir fortis* (or *fortissimus*).**
2. **A man of eminent valor, *vir egregiae virtutis.***
3. **A man of bodily strength and beauty, *homo validus et pulcher.***
4. **Achilles was a man of very great strength and remarkable beauty, *Achilles vir erat summis viribus et excimia pulchritudine.***

d. Manner — in English WITH or IN — is in Latin usually expressed by an Adverb when there is one; otherwise by the ablative, often with **cum** (see § 248. R.): as,

1. **With care, accurate** (or, *cum cura*).
2. **In silence, tacite** (or, *silentio*).
3. **In the most friendly manner, amicissime.**
4. **With the greatest zeal, summo studio.**

e. The Price of a thing, — usually given in English with the preposition FOR or AT, — when a *definite sum* is stated, is expressed in Latin by the Ablative; but *indefinite* price or value is expressed by the Genitives of Quantity (*tantū, quantū, &c.*), given in § 252. *a.* These Genitives often answer to the use of an adverb in English, such as *highly, slightly, not-at-all*, used with expressions of value or esteem. Thus —

1. **How much does this house sell for? ten thousand sesterces. *Quanti hae aedes veneunt? decies mille nummis.***
2. **I esteem Plato very highly, but the truth more. *Platonem permagni sed veritatem pluris aestimo.***

Exercise 12.

1. The Veneti had much confidence in their fortified positions. Their coasts were fringed with promontories and peninsulas, and, relying on their strong ships, fully armed and supplied¹ with leathern sails, they were not alarmed even by the greatest tempests of the ocean. 2. A liar² hath need of a good memory, but truth is always consistent with itself. 3. I offer myself to thee, O Hercules! because thou art descended from the gods, and givest proofs of that descent by thy love of virtue. 4. Great things are achieved by great exertions, and glory was never the reward of sloth. 5. The Sabines, like most other mountaineers, were brave, hardy, and frugal; and even the Romans looked-up³ to them [with admiration] on account of their honesty and temperance. 6. Remus leaped in⁴

¹ *ornatus.*

² Dative.

³ *adoror.*

⁴ *per.*

scorn over his brother's wall. 7. Romulus appeared after [his] death to Proculus in more-than-mortal¹ beauty. 8. Augustus lived with republican simplicity² in a plain³ house on the Palatine [hill], and educated his family with great strictness⁴ and frugality.⁴ 9. Vitellius was remarkable for his gluttony⁵ and his coarse⁶ vices. 10. Demosthenes listened awhile to the bland professions of Archias, the actor, but at length replied, "Archias, you never won me by your acting, nor will you now by your promises." 11. Columbus entered the hall surrounded by a brilliant crowd of cavaliers, among whom he was conspicuous for his stately and commanding person.⁷ 12. To the English it was a night of⁸ hope, fear, suspense, [and] anxiety. They had been wasted by disease, broken with fatigue, and weakened by the many privations which are wont to attend⁹ an army marching through a hostile country. But they were supported by the spirit and confidence of their gallant leader, and by the recollection of victories won by their fathers. 13. The forests have given place to cultivated fields, the morass is dried up, the land has become solid, and is covered with habitations. A countless multitude, living in¹⁰ peace and abundance upon the fruits of their labors, has succeeded to the tribes of hunters who were always contending with war and famine. What has produced these wonders? What has renovated the surface of the earth? The name of this beneficent genius¹¹ is Security.

¹ *divinus*. ² *cultus moderatus* (abl.). ³ *minime sumptuosus*.

⁴ Adverbs. ⁵ *intemperantia gulæ*. ⁶ *turpis*.

⁷ *habitus corporis*. ⁸ *plena*. ⁹ *esse* ¹⁰ *in*, ablative. ¹¹ *dea*.

Lesson 14.

Cases. — 5. Separation and Comparison.

LEARN §§ 243, with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (ablative of Separation); 229 (dative with Compounds); 247, with *a*, 250 (ablative of Comparison and of the Degree of Difference).

a. The relations denoted in English by FROM or OF — in such phrases as *to deprive of*, *to be free from*, *in want of*, and the like — are in Latin expressed by the ablative: as,

1. He is free from terror, *caret formidine*.
2. To retire from office, *abire magistratu*.
3. A city stripped of defence, *urbs nuda praesidio*.
4. A man without a country, *homo qui caret patria*.
5. You will relieve me of great fear, *magno me metu liberabis*.

N. B. Motion *from a place* is regularly expressed by means of prepositions (see Lesson 17).

b. When a thing is said to be taken away *from a person*, the dative is almost always used instead of the ablative: as,

1. He took a ring from the woman, *mulieri anulum detraxit*.
2. You have robbed me of my property, *bona mihi abstulisti*.

c. The uses of the ablative with the Comparative may be seen in the following: —

1. Nothing is dearer to a man than life, *nihil homini vita est carius*.
2. Quicker than one would think, *opinione celerius*.
3. Much more rich than wise, *multo divitior quam sapientior*.
4. The more dangerous the disease the more praised the physician, *quo periculosior morbus eo laudatior medicus*.
5. The more virtuously one lives, the less he will injure others, *quanto quis vivit honestius tanto minus nocebit aliis*.
6. Not more than two hundred horsemen escaped, *haud amplius ducenti equites effugerunt*.

Exercise 13.

1. The orator Hortensius was eight years older than Cicero. 2. Licinius liberated the plebeians¹ from an oppressive bondage. 3. Rome was now deprived of almost all her allies. 4. The constitution² of Lucius Cornelius took from the knights the judicial-power³ which they had exercised since the times of the Gracchi. 5. Men are much less in bulk than very many animals. 6. Grief and indignation deprived Marius of utterance.⁴ 7. Antisthenes, the Cynic, was once very sick,⁵ and cried out, "Who will deliver me from these torments?"⁶ Then said Diogenes, who by chance was by, "This knife, if you will." "I do not say from my life," he⁷ replied, "but from my disease." 8. The archbishop tore the diadem from the head of the statue, and the image, thus despoiled of its honors, was thrown upon the ground. 9. The aged Nestor boasts his virtues, nor seems to be too loquacious; for his speech, says Homer, flowed from his tongue sweeter than honey. 10. Hesiod was robbed of a fair share of his heritage by the unrighteous decision of judges who had been bribed by his brother Perses. The latter was afterwards deprived of his property, and asked relief of⁸ his brother. 11. Alcaeus, for instance, cheered by his songs the nobles who had been driven into-exile.⁹ 12. After the expulsion of the kings,¹⁰ a new office was created at Rome, called the dictatorship, greater than the consulship. This dignity, however, was discontinued after the second Punic war. The stronger

¹ *plebs* (sing.). ² *instituta* (plur.). ³ *judicium*. ⁴ *vox*.

⁵ *graviter aegrotare*. ⁶ *malum*. ⁷ *ille*. ⁸ *a*.

⁹ *e patria* (abl.). ¹⁰ *post reges exactos*.

the Republic became, the less it needed this extraordinary power. But in¹ the civil war it was revived by order of the people, and conferred upon Sulla, who afterwards resigned it and became a private citizen.

¹ Ablative.

Lesson 15.

Cases. — 6. Special Uses of the Genitive.

LEARN §§ 216, with *c*, *d*, *e* (Partitive genitive); and 217 (Objective genitive with nouns).

a. When in English one noun is closely connected with another by a preposition, the genitive is commonly used in Latin, no matter what the preposition is in English (objective Genitive: see examples under § 217): as,

1. Prayer to the gods, *precatio deorum*.
2. Escape from danger, *fuga periculi*.
3. Power over every thing, *potestas omnium rerum*.
4. Pain in the head, *dolor capitis*.
5. Confidence in one's strength, *fiducia virium*.
6. Departure from life, *excessus vitae*.
7. Subject for jests, *materia jocorum*.
8. Struggle for office, *contentio honorum*.
9. Relief from duty, *vacatio muneris*.
10. Difference in politics, *rei publicae dissensio*.
11. Reputation for valor, *opinio virtutis*.
12. Union with Cæsar, *conjunctio Caesaris*.
13. Victory in war, *victoria belli*.
14. Devotion to us, *studium nostri*.
15. Grief for his son, *luctus filii*.
16. A means of guarding against troubles, *cautio incommodorum*.

NOTE. — Nouns which denote *feeling* often take the accusative with *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, *ad*, instead of an objective genitive. Prepositions are also used when the relation is very remote. (See examples under § 217. R.).

b. Wherever the relation expressed by a noun with a preposition (especially *OF*) can be viewed as a quality of the modified noun, the Latin prefers to use an adjective: just as in English we say, *the Boston massacre; the Jackson administration; the Socratic philosophy; the touch of the royal hand*, &c. (compare examples in Lesson 5). Thus —

1. The shout of the enemy, *clamor hostilis*.
2. Jealousy of the Senate, *invidia senatoria*.
3. Confidence in you, *fiducia tua* (more commonly *tui*).
4. The Cyrus of Xenophon, *Cyrus Xenophonteus*.

c. Where a word denoting a whole is used with another denoting a part (English *OF*, *IN*, *AMONG*), it is regularly put in the genitive. (But notice carefully the Remarks on page 116 of the Grammar.) The peculiarities of the construction are seen in the following idiomatic phrases: —

1. Enough money, *satis pecuniae*.
2. More learning than wisdom, *plus doctrinae quam prudentiae*.
3. One of a thousand, *unus de multis*.
4. Alone of all, *solus ex omnibus* (or *omnium*).
5. At that age, *id aetatis*.
6. Nowhere in the world, *nusquam gentium*.
7. Of the two consuls one was killed and the other wounded, *duo consules alter est interfectus alter vulneratus*.

Exercise 14.

1. On his way¹ to prison Phocion suffered some² gross³ insults from the populace with-meekness⁴ and dignity.⁵ 2. Two wives of the German king, Ariovistus, perished; of their daughters, one was slain, another captured. 3. We have not yet discussed⁶ the principal wages of virtue and the greatest of the prizes that are held out to it. 4. From his boyhood⁷ the Roman soldier was schooled to⁸ habitual⁹ indiffer-

¹ *cum duceretur*. ² *quidam*. ³ *gravis*. ⁴ *submisse*.

⁵ *cum* (with *abl.*). ⁶ *disserere de*. ⁷ *a puero*.

⁸ Ablative. ⁹ *perpetuus*.

ence to [his own] life. 5. During¹ the holidays in summer² the young men exercise themselves with³ sports. 6. To what a degree of brutality will excess of misery debase human nature! 7. Cneius Lentulus, a military tribune, said to the wounded consul, "Lucius Æmilius, whom the gods ought to favor as the only [person] free-from⁴ the blame of this day's disaster, take this horse while you have any remains of strength.⁵ Do-not⁶ add to the horror of this day⁷ by the death of a consul. Even without that, there is abundant [cause for] tears and mourning." 8. I will recount the delights and pleasures in this age of eighty-three, which I now take, and on account of which men generally account me happy. 9. Many inventions greatly facilitate success in the chase. The most singular of these is a poison in which they dip their arrows. The slightest wound with these envenomed shafts is mortal. 10. Hannibal, after his defeat at Zama, served his country in peace. 11. Many men expose themselves to death for the sake of power; but this king resigned his crown because his love for his dominion, his affection for his subjects, and his regard for their interests were greater than his desire for power. 12. The conspirators divided into three parties. One was posted near the governor's house, a second secured the approaches to the market-place, a third hastened to the quarter of the tombs, and awaited the signal for the fight. 13. Not only was Brutus's life saved at the battle of Pharsalus, but, restored to the state after the death of Pompey, along with many of his friends, he had also great influence with⁸ Cæsar.

¹ Ablative.² Adjective.³ *in*.⁴ *insons*.⁵ *dum aliquid superest virium*.⁶ *ne* (perf. subj.).⁷ Lit. "make this day one-of-horror" (*funestus*).⁸ *apud*.

Lesson 16.

Cases. — 7. Use of Two Cases.

1. REVIEW §§ 225, with sub-sections (Accusative and Dative) ; 239, with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (two Accusatives).

Learn §§ 219, 220, 221, 222 (Verbs of Reminding, Accusing, &c., with the Impersonals *miseret*, etc.).

2. A verb in English, besides its object, has often another modifying noun with a preposition. Such nouns are in Latin usually put in the case corresponding to the English preposition, though sometimes a preposition is expressed.

a. The Accusative and Dative (compare Lesson 10, *b*), in such phrases as —

1. He laid the burden on my shoulders, *humeris meis onus imposuit*.
2. I do not envy Crassus for his wealth (I do not grudge wealth to Crassus), *Crasso divitias non invidéo*.
3. Cæsar required ten hostages of the Helvetians, *Caesar Helvetiis decem obsides imperavit* (225. *c*).

NOTE. — In these cases notice the Latin idiom, as it often differs from the English ; and observe carefully the construction of each verb as given in the Vocabulary.

b. Accusative and Genitive, in such phrases as —

1. You remind me of my duty, *me mones officii*.
2. He accuses me of theft, *arguit me furti*.
3. I repent of my folly, *meae me stultitiae paenitet*.
4. I am weary of life, *me vitae taedet* (weary with toil, *fessus labore*).

c. Two Accusatives : 1. One in Apposition (see Lesson 2) ;
2. With verbs of Asking and Teaching :

Panætilius taught Scipio the Greek philosophy, *Panaetius Scipionem Graecam docuit philosophiam*.

Exercise 15.

1. The men-of-Minturnæ¹ repented of their ungrateful conduct towards² a man who had been the safety of Italy. 2. The younger Marius put an end to his own life.³ 3. In the proscriptions of Sulla, to many a man who belonged to no party an estate or a house was his destruction. For although the property of the proscribed belonged to the state, yet the friends of Sulla purchased it at-a-nominal-price.⁴ 4. Marius upbraided the nobles⁵ [with] their effeminacy and idleness, and proudly compared his own words and exploits with their indolence and ignorance. His election was a great victory for the common-people, and a great humiliation to the aristocracy. 5. The great numbers of the enemy were a hindrance rather than a help to them. 6. Polybius taught the noble-men of Rome their own municipal law. 7. O Jupiter! give us those things that are-good-for⁶ us! 8. Praise is to an old man an empty sound. I have outlived my friends and my rivals. Nothing is now of much account to me. 9. An exile and a menial muttered the last farewell to Pompey, the mighty victor of the East, the powerful lord of the Roman Senate. 10. The Senate distributed provinces and suitable honors among the partisans of Brutus. 11. The noblest of the Romans were ashamed of the victory by which they had avenged the disgrace of the Caudine Forks. 12. Old age is⁷ most irksome⁷ to the poor.⁸ 13. Publius Autronius and Servius Cornelius Sulla had been elected consuls, but were convicted of bribery. Catiline also, who wished to

¹ *Minturnensis.*² *erga.*³ *mortem sibi consciscere.*⁴ *minimo.* ⁵ Dative.⁶ *convenire.*⁷ *piget.*⁸ Accusative.

become a candidate, had been impeached¹ for oppression in his province by Publius Clodius. 14. Caius Mucius was seized by the guards and brought before the king, who threatened him with cruel tortures. But he said, "See now how little your torments terrify² me." Then he plunged his right hand into the fire of an altar that burned near by, and held it in the flames, by which it was wholly consumed. From this act the name *Scævola* was given him, which signifies *He that uses the left hand*. 15. The second secession extorted from the patricians again a second³ great charter⁴ of liberty. The people had become tired of the decemvirs, and were dissatisfied⁵ with their measures; for which reason they retired from [their] office, and the people elected ten tribunes. The decemvirs were then accused of treason, and some were condemned to death, others committed suicide. Two consuls were elected, and the Valerian and Horatian laws were passed. The plebeians were still, however, debarred from marriage with the patricians.

¹ *reus fieri*. ² Subjunctive. ³ *alter*. ⁴ *pignus*. ⁵ *paenitet*.

Lesson 17.

Cases. — 8. Time and Place.

LEARN §§ 256, with *a*; 257, 258 (reading Notes), with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, and Remarks.

Learn also §§ 259. *a* to *h*, and 260. *a*.

a. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of *time when*, where in English time is not the main idea: as,

1. In the fight at Cannæ, *pugna Cannensi* (or *apud Cannas*).
2. At the Roman games, *ludis Romanis*.
3. In all the wars of Gaul, *omnibus Gallicis bellis*.

b. In many expressions of time the accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub*, is used. Such are the following : —

1. **A thanksgiving was voted for the 1st of January, *supplicatio decreta est in Kalendas Januarias*.**
2. **They assembled at the [appointed] day, *convenerunt ad diem*.**
3. **Till evening, *ad vesperum*.
Towards (about) evening, *ad vesperum*.**
4. **About the same time, *sub idem tempus*.**

c. Time either *during* or *within which* may be expressed by a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral : as,

1. **Within (just) four days, *quinto die*.**
2. **He has reigned going on six years, *regnat jam sextum annum*. But also—**
3. **He has already reigned for six years, *regnavit jam sex annos*.**

d. Distance of time before or after any thing is variously expressed : as,

1. **Three years after, *post* (or before, *ante*) *tres annos, post tertium annum, tres post annos, tertium post annum, tribus post annis, tertio post anno*.**
2. **Three years after his banishment, *tribus annis (tertio anno) post exilium (post quam ejectus est)*.**
3. **Within the last three years, *his tribus proximis annis*.**
4. **A few years hence, *paucis annis*.**
5. **Three years ago, *abhinc annos tres (tribus annis); ante hos tres annos*.**
6. **It is three years since, *triennium est cum (tres anni sunt cum)*.**

e. The *time of day* is only counted by hours, beginning at sunrise (*primā, secundā horā*) ; the time of night by watches, (*vigiliae*), of which there were four from sunset to sunrise.

f. The names of the Months are adjectives, and agree either with *mensis* or with the parts into which the month was divided in the complicated Roman system, for which see Grammar, § 376.

g. The year is expressed by the names of the *consuls* in the Ablative Absolute. Modern dates may be expressed by the year after the birth of Christ (*post Christum natum*).

h. With names of places (except Towns, &c., see § 258), TO is expressed by **in** or **ad** with the accusative; IN by **in** or **ab**, with the ablative; FROM by **ab**, **de**, **ex**, with the ablative. But **AT**, meaning *near* (not *in*), is expressed with all names of place by **ad** or **apud**, with the accusative.

REMARK. — Notice that, when several names of place follow a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction. Thus —

Within four days after this was done the matter was reported to Chrysogonus in Sulla's camp at Volaterræ, quadriduo quo hæc gesta sunt res ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullæ Volaterras defertur.

Notice also that *the meaning of the Latin verb* must be considered in relations of place: as,

1. **He arrived in Spain, pervenit in Hispaniam.**
2. **He arrived at Rome, pervenit Romam.**
3. **They assembled in the Senate-house, convenerunt in curiam.**
4. **He brought his army together in one place, coëgit exercitum in unum locum.**

Exercise 16.

1. After the death of Lucretia, Brutus threw off his assumed stupidity, and placed himself at the head¹ of her friends. They carried the body into the market-place [of] Collatia.² There³ the people took up arms and renounced the Tarquins. A number-of⁴ young men attended the funeral-procession⁵ to Rome. Brutus summoned the people⁶ [and] related⁷ the deed-of-shame.⁸ All classes were influenced with the same indignation.⁹ By order of the people Tarquin was deposed,¹⁰ and, along with his family, was banished from the city. Brutus now set out for the army at Ardea.¹¹ Tarquin in the meantime had hastened to

¹ Lit. "added himself as leader." ² Accusative. ³ Relative.

⁴ *plures.* ⁵ *exsequiæ funeris.* ⁶ *convocato populo.*

⁷ *narrare de.* ⁸ *facinus flagitiosum.* ⁹ *dolor et indignatio.*

¹⁰ *regnum abrogari* (with dat.). ¹¹ Accusative.

Rome, but found the gates closed against him. Brutus was received with joy at Ardea, and the army renounced [their] allegiance¹ to the tyrant. Tarquin, with his two sons, Titus and Aruns, took refuge at Cære, in Etruria. Sextus fled to Gabii, where he was shortly after murdered by the friends of those whom he had put to death. Tarquin had reigned twenty-two years when he was driven from Rome. In memory of this event an annual festival was celebrated on the 24th of February, called the *Regifugium*.

2. Jugurtha was taken prisoner. The² great traitor fell by the treachery of his nearest relatives. Lucius Sulla brought the crafty and restless Numidian in chains,³ along with his children, to the Roman headquarters; and the war, which had lasted for seven years, was at an end. The glory of this victory was given to Marius. King Jugurtha, in⁴ royal robes and in chains, along with his two sons, preceded the triumphal chariot of the victor, when-he-entered⁵ Rome two years afterwards, on January 1st, B. C. 104. By order of Marius, the son⁶ of the desert perished a few days afterwards in the subterranean city prison.

¹ *obedientiam abicio.*² *ille.*³ *vinculus catenis.*⁴ *regie vestitus.*⁵ Participle.⁶ *alumnus.*

Lesson 18.

Cases. — 9. Prepositions.

1. LEARN §§ 152, with *a, b, c*, comparing 260 (Use of Prepositions); also §§ 237. *d*, 239. *b* (compounds of *circum* and *trans*).

2. In general, the use of prepositions in Latin is the same as in English. They are always followed

either by the Accusative or Ablative: those implying *motion towards an object* for the most part taking the accusative, and those implying *rest in*, or *motion from an object*, the ablative.

NOTE. — There are very many idiomatic uses of prepositions, for which see the Examples in § 153, and consult the Lexicon.

a. Position is frequently expressed in Latin with *ab* (rarely *ex*), properly meaning *from*: as,

1. In the rear, *a tergo*.
2. On the side of Pompey, *a parte Pompeiana*.
3. On the left hand, *a sinistra* (compare *hinc*, *on this side*).
4. On the other side, *ex altera parte*.
5. In a great degree, *magna ex parte*.

b. In the choice of prepositions the Latin point of view must be carefully observed, as in many cases it differs from our own (see § 260. *a*). Thus —

1. To put clothes into a chest, *ponere vestes in arca*.
2. To choose in one's place, *in alicujus locum deligere*.
3. To fight on horseback, *ex equo pugnare*.
4. It was reported in camp, *in castra nuntiatum est*.
5. To go on board ship, *conscendere in navem* (more commonly without the preposition).
6. To send a man a letter, *mittere (dare) literas ad aliquem*. But —
7. To give one a letter (to carry), *dare literas alicui*.

c. In many cases where a preposition is used in English, Latin has the preposition compounded with a verb or implied in it. In such cases the construction of the Latin verb must be observed (see Dictionary): as,

1. To go over a river, *flumen transire*.
2. To take one's forces across a river, *copias flumen transducere*.
3. To go beyond the boundaries, *egredi fines* (or out of the city, *ex urbe*).
4. To fly from the enemy, *fugere hostes*.
5. To get into one's favor, *intre alicujus gratiam*.

NOTE. — When a verb with a Preposition in English is represented in Latin by one of the compounds given in 228 (*ad*, *ante*, *con*, &c.), it is commonly followed by the dative. If, however, the compound represents a verb qualified by an Adverb, it retains its original construction: as, *insidet equo*, *he sits upon a horse*; but, *convocat suos*, *he calls his men together*.

Exercise 17.

1. Without intelligence and goodness bodily gifts are ¹ of little ² worth.¹

2. Besides life and sense (which he has in common with ³ the brutes), there is in man ⁴ something more exalted, more pure, and that more nearly approaches ⁵ to divinity.

3. It was an arduous [undertaking] to conduct such ⁶ a body of men through hostile nations, across swamps and rivers which had never been passed by any one except roving barbarians. But they penetrated a good way into the mountains. Then, however, a chief appeared, with a numerous body, in a narrow-pass. But men who had surmounted so many obstacles despised the opposition of such feeble enemies.¹²

4. As I was hurrying through the town a group of boys ran before me, crying out, *Agamemnon! Agamemnon!* I went on behind them, and they led me to the tomb of the king of kings, a gigantic structure,⁷ for the most part in-good-preservation,⁸ of a conical form, and covered with turf. The stone over the door is twenty-seven feet long ⁹ and seventeen wide; larger than any hewn ¹⁰ stone in the world, except Pompey's pillar. The royal sepulchre was forsaken and empty; the shepherd shelters his flock within it; the traveller sits under its shade, and at-that-moment ¹¹ a goat was

¹ *valere*. ² Superlative. ³ *commune esse* [*alicui*] *cum*. ⁴ Plural.

⁵ *prope abesse*. ⁶ *tantum agmen*. ⁷ *moles*. ⁸ *incolumis*.

⁹ *in longitudinem*. ¹⁰ *quadratus*. ¹¹ *tum maxime*.

¹² *tam exiguum vim hostium*.

dozing¹ quietly in [one] corner. I turned-away² [and] left him³ in quiet possession. The boys were waiting outside the door, and crying, *Mycenæ! Mycenæ!* led me away from the place.

5. I have at length arrived at Cadiz. I came across the bay yesterday morning, and have established myself in very pleasant rooms which look out upon the public square of the city. The morning sun awakes me, and the sea-breeze comes in at my window. At night the square is lighted by lamps suspended from the trees, and thronged with a brilliant crowd of the young and gay. Cadiz is beautiful almost beyond-imagination.⁴

¹ *dormito* (imperfect).

² Participle.

³ Relative.

⁴ *supra quam quis animo concipere possit.*

Lesson 19.

Verbs. — 1. Narrative Tenses.

1. LEARN §§ 264. *a*; 276, with *a*, *d*; 277, with *a-c*; 278, 279, with *a-c*; 280 (Present and Past Tenses of the Indicative); and 275 (Historical Infinitive).

Review § 115. *b* (use of Perfect and Imperfect).

2. The narrative tenses in Latin are used nearly as in English. But —

a. The Present is used much oftener than in English to express a past action more vividly.

b. The ordinary English past tense is represented in Latin sometimes by the Perfect (historical), and sometimes by the Imperfect. (For the distinction see § 115. *b*). But the use of the Imperfect depends not so much on the actual duration of the action as upon the way in which the writer wishes to represent it. Thus —

1. Cicero lived sixty-three years, *Cicero vixit LXIII annos*. [Here the action, though of long duration, is stated as a simple fact.]
2. Bibulus watched the heavens, while Cæsar held the election, *Bibulus de caelo servabat, cum Caesar comitia habebat, or habuit*. [Here the action, though brief, is represented as continuing.]
3. Homer flourished before the founding of Rome, *Homerus fuit ante Romam conditam*.
4. Homer was more skilled than Hesiod, *Homerus doctior erat Hesiodo*.

c. In rapid narrative, the English past tense is often rendered by the simple (historical) Infinitive, with its subject in the nominative. This construction also often corresponds with the English "began to." (For examples, see Grammar, p. 194.)

d. Customary action is represented in general by the Present, and in past tense by the Imperfect; though *soleo*, and similar words, are often used (but much less commonly than in English) to give emphasis to the fact of custom. Thus —

1. He was always praising Milo, *laudabat semper Milonem*.
2. He would often play with his children, *saepe cum pueris ludebat*.
3. It was a habit of Quintus Mucius to tell, *Q. Mucius narrare solebat*.

e. The beginning of an action is often expressed by the Present or Imperfect, especially with *jam*: as,

1. I begin to feel like dancing, *jam lubet saltare*.
2. They stood up and began to applaud, *stantes plaudebant*.

f. The English compound perfect is often expressed in Latin (when the action still continues) by the present, with some word denoting duration of time. The same usage with the imperfect is more rare.

1. We have suffered many years, *multos annos patimur*.
2. We have long been involved in dangers, *jam diu in periculis versamur*.
3. The forces which they had long been getting ready, *copiae quas diu comparabant*.

Exercise 18.

1. The Tiber had overflowed its banks far and wide.¹ The cradle in which the babes were placed was stranded at the foot of the Palatine, and overturned on the root of a wild fig-tree. A she-wolf, which had come to drink ² of ³ the stream, came to them from time to time, and suckled them. When ⁴ they wanted other food, the woodpecker, a bird sacred to Mars, brought it to them. At length this marvellous spectacle was seen ⁵ by Faustulus the king's shepherd, who took the children home to his wife Acca Larentia. They were called Romulus and Remus, and grew up with the sons of their foster-parents ⁶ on the Palatine Hill.

2. Then Nasica rushed out of the Senate-house, followed ⁷ by many of the Senators. The people made ⁸ way for them, broke up ⁸ the benches, and armed ⁸ themselves with sticks, and rushed ⁸ upon Tiberius and his friends. The tribune ⁹ fled to the temple of Jupiter; but the door had been barred by the priests, and in his flight he fell over a prostrate body. As ¹⁰ he was rising, he received the first blow from one of his colleagues, and was quickly despatched.

3. Pyrrhus was at first victorious; for his own talents were superior to those of the captains who were opposed to him, and the Romans were not prepared for the onset of the elephants of the East, which were then for the first time seen in Italy — as it were moving mountains, with long snakes for hands. But the victories of the Epirots were fiercely disputed,

¹ *late.* ² *potum* (supine). ³ *ad* (acc.). ⁴ *cum* (with indic.).

⁵ *conspicere.* ⁶ *altiores.* ⁷ *comitatus.* ⁸ Hist. Inf.

⁹ *ille.*

¹⁰ *cum* (with imperf. subj.).

dearly purchased, and altogether unprofitable. At length Manius Curius Dentatus, who had in his first consulship won two triumphs, was again placed at the head of the Roman commonwealth, and sent to encounter the invaders. A great battle was fought near Beneventum, in which Pyrrhus was completely defeated.

4. Cato was an unfeeling and cruel master. His conduct towards his slaves was detestable. After dinner he would often severely chastise them, thong in hand, for some trifling act of negligence, and sometimes condemned them to death. When they were worn out or useless, he sold them or turned them out of doors. He treated the lower animals no better. His war-horse, which had borne him through his campaign in Spain, he sold in-that-country.¹ In his old age he sought gain with increasing eagerness, but never attempted to profit by the misuse of his public functions. He accepted no bribes, he reserved no booty to his own use; but he became a speculator, not only in slaves, but in buildings, artificial waters, and pleasure-grounds. In this, as in other points,² he was a representative of the old Romans, who were a money-getting³ and money-loving⁴ people.

¹ *ibi.*² *res.*³ *quaestuosus.*⁴ *avarus.*

Lesson 20.

Verba. — 2. The Passive Voice.

I. LEARN §§ 111 (use of the Passive); also 135. *d* (gerundive of Deponents); and 129 (the second Periphrastic Conjugation).

Review §§ 232, with *a, c* (dative of Agent); 246 (ablative of Agent).

2. The Passive in Latin is often employed where in English we prefer the Active. The principal cases are the following:—

a. The Impersonal use of neuter verbs in the passive (compare § 146. c; and Method, Lesson 20, Obs. 3): as,

1. They live on plunder, *ex rapto vivitur*.
2. They fought fiercely on both sides, *acriter utrimque pugnatum est*.

b. This impersonal use is the regular way of representing the English passive, where the corresponding Latin verb does not govern the accusative (see § 230): as,

1. The commander is relieved (by the appointment of a successor), *imperatorī succeditur*.
2. I am persuaded that this is true, *mihi persuasum est hoc esse verum*.
3. These things are done more easily than they are resisted, *facilius haec fiunt quam his resistitur*.
4. This subject was much discussed, *de hac re multum disputatum est*.
5. Let the influence of friends be employed, and when employed obeyed, *amicorum auctoritas adhibeatur et adhibitae pareatur*.

c. The most common way of expressing the English *ought*, *must*, and the like, is by some form of *esse* with the Gerundive, which in this construction is always PASSIVE, no matter which voice is used in English (compare § 296. Note): as,

1. Nobody is to be blamed, *nemo culpandus est*.
2. We must do every thing, *omnia nobis sunt facienda*.
3. All must die, *omnibus moriendum est*.
4. We must resist old age (or old age must be resisted), *senectuti resistendum est*.

d. When the Subject of the action is indefinite, the Latin generally prefers the passive construction (compare a, above): as,

1. Men do not gather grapes from thorns, *ex sentibus uvae non percipiuntur*.
2. We do ill whatever we do from confidence in fortune, *male geritur quicquid geritur fortunae fide*.

e. Many neuter verbs in English are rendered in Latin by reflexives or by the passive: as,

1. Hens roll in the dirt, *gallinae in pulvere volutantur*.
2. He rides on the Appian Way, *in via Appia vehitur*.
3. Codrus is bursting with envy, *invidia rumpitur Codrus*.
4. He turns to his lieutenant, *ad legatum se vertit* (or, *vertitur*).

3. On the other hand, an active construction is often preferred in Latin, where the passive is used in English. This happens —

a. In cases where the emphasis is on the Object of an action, or the action itself, rather than on the Agent; because the emphasis can be given in Latin (though not in English) by position. Thus —

1. Socrates was put to death by his fellow-citizens, *Socratem cives sui interfecerunt*.
2. Egypt is watered by the Nile, and Mesopotamia made fertile by the Euphrates, *Aegyptum Nilus irrigat, Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit Euphrates*.

b. As most deponent verbs have no passive, the active construction must frequently be used for the English passive: as,

1. He is most admired who is not influenced by money, *quem pecunia non movet eum homines maxime admirantur*.
2. We should not mourn a death which is succeeded by immortality, *non lugenda est mors quam immortalitas consequatur*.

c. In a few cases, instead of the regular passive in Latin, a neuter verb of kindred meaning is employed: as,

1. To add, *addere*; to be added, *accedere*.
2. To destroy, *perdere*; to be destroyed, *perire*.
3. To sell, *vendere*; to be sold, *venire* (*veneo*).
4. To flog, *verberare*; to be flogged, *vapulare*.

4. When the present passive in English denotes a *completed action*, it is generally represented by the perfect in Latin; but when it denotes an *action in*

progress, or a *general fact*, we must use the present. Thus —

1. The enemy are beaten, *hostes victi sunt*.
2. He is loved by his friends, *diligitur ab amicis*.
3. Among the Parthians the signal is given by a drum, *apud Parthos signum datur tympano*.

REMARK. — Care must be taken in rendering the confused or disguised forms of the passive in English: as,

1. The house is building, *domus aedificatur* (but, he is building a house, *domum aedificat*).
2. While these things are being done, *dum haec geruntur*.

5. When a verb in the active voice is followed by two cases (with or without a preposition), the accusative of the direct object becomes the subject of the passive, the other case being retained as in the active construction. Thus (compare examples on p. 37) —

1. Crassus is not envied for his wealth, *Crasso divitiae non invidentur*.
2. Verres is charged with extortion, *Verres repetundarum reus fit*.
3. Cato is asked his opinion, *Cato rogatur sententiam*.

REMARK. — The use of a second accusative in this construction is found chiefly with *rogo*, *posco*, and *celo*.

Exercise 19.

1. We must resist old age, my friends, — says Cicero in the book entitled ¹ *Cato Major*, — and its failings must be made good by pains-taking. We must fight against old age as against disease. Regard must be paid to health. Moderate exercise should be employed, a sufficiency of food and drink must be taken.² Not only the body needs to be bolstered-up, but the mind and soul much more; for these too die out through old age.

¹ See Lesson 8. 3.

² *adhibere*.

2. "Even now," said Cæsar, "we may¹ return; if we cross the bridge, arms must decide the contest." At that moment of suspense² [there] appeared suddenly the figure of a youth, remarkable for comeliness and stature, playing on a pipe, the emblem of peace and security. The shepherds who were about the spot began to mingle with the soldiers and straggle towards him, captivated by his simple airs; when with a violent movement he snatched a trumpet from one of the military band,³ rushed with it to the bank of the river, and blowing a furious blast of martial music, leaped into the water, and disappeared on the opposite side. "Let us advance,"⁴ exclaimed Cæsar, "where⁵ the gods direct, and our enemies invite us. Be the die cast!"

3. A conspiracy⁷ against the life of Cæsar had-been-formed⁷ in-the-beginning-of-the-year.⁸ Many of the conspirators had fought in the war against Cæsar; and had not only been pardoned⁶ by him, but raised to offices of rank and honor. Among others was Marcus Junius Brutus, whom Cæsar had pardoned after the battle of Pharsalia, and had since treated almost as a son. He was now persuaded by Cassius to-join⁹ the conspiracy, and imitate his ancestor Lucius Junius Brutus, the liberator¹⁰ of Rome from the tyranny of the Tarquins. They now resolved¹¹ to assassinate⁹ the Dictator in the Senate-house on the Ides of March. Rumors of the plot got abroad, and Cæsar was strongly urged not to attend the session of

¹ *posse*, impersonal.

² *in ea sollicitudine*.

³ *uni ex cornicinibus*.

⁴ Present Subjunctive.

⁵ *qua*.

⁶ Change the voice. ⁷ Impersonal.

⁸ *ineunte anno*.

⁹ *ut*, with imper. subj. ¹⁰ Lit. "who," &c. ¹¹ Impers. passive.

the Senate. But he disregarded the warnings which had been given him.

4. The ten ambassadors, of whom Cato was chief, offered their arbitration, which was accepted by Masinissa, but rejected by the Carthaginians, who had no confidence in Roman justice. This refusal Cato never forgave them. In traversing their country, he had remarked the increasing wealth and population. After his return to Rome, he let fall from the fold of his robe some early-ripe Libyan figs; and as¹ their² beauty was admired,¹ "Those figs," quoth he, "were gathered three days ago at Carthage. So close is our enemy to our walls." From that time forth, whenever he was called upon for his vote in the Senate, though³ the subject of debate bore no relation to Carthage, he added these words, "Carthage must be destroyed."

¹ Active (*cum*, with imperf. subj.).

² Relative.

³ *quamquam*, with imperf.

Lesson 21.

Verbs. — 3. Infinitive Constructions.

1. LEARN §§ 270, 271 (uses of the Infinitive); also 288, with *a*, *b* (use of the Present and Perfect infinitive). Learn also §§ 272, 330, 336 (Accusative and Infinitive).

2. The English infinitive is rendered by the Latin infinitive in many constructions: —

a. When it is equivalent to an abstract noun: as,
To err is human, *humanum est errare*.

NOTE. — An abstract noun is also sometimes equivalent to an infinitive, and is to be rendered in the same way in Latin: as,

1. **What is creation? *Quid est creare?***

2. **Writing with a stile is easy, *est facile stilo scribere*.**

b. When a second action of the same subject is indicated : as,
I begin to grow old, *senescere incipio*.

NOTE. — This principle includes many classes of words where the connection is very close between the infinitive and the verb on which it depends ; and also many where it is more remote, so that a subjunctive clause might also be used.

3. The English **THAT** with a verb, when it denotes a statement or thought, is always to be rendered by *an Infinitive with an Accusative for its subject*. This construction (called the Indirect Discourse) is a very common one in Latin, and is used after all words of *knowing, perceiving, thinking, and telling*. In English we often use the infinitive in such sentences as the preceding : as, " I think it to be right ; " " He is said to be rich ; " and so on.

a. The English simple infinitive, with expressions of *hoping, promising, threatening*, and the like, is rendered by the same construction, of the infinitive with subject-accusative : as,

I hope to come, *spero me venturum [esse]*.

b. The English infinitive may be used after any verb of *commanding or forbidding*. In Latin it is regularly used only after *jubeo* and *veto* (see hereafter, Lesson 28).

c. In using the Indirect Discourse in Latin, *observe what tense would be used in the direct discourse*, and make the tense of the infinitive correspond to that. Thus —

- 1.** He says that his father is here, *dicit patrem adesse*.
- 2.** He said that his father was here, *dixit patrem adesse*.
- 3.** He will say that his father is here, *dicet patrem adesse*.

In all these three cases the same tense is used in Latin, because the same tense would be used in the direct : viz. " My father is here."

- 4.** He says his father was here, *dicit patrem adfuisse*.
- 5.** He said his father had been (or was formerly) here, *dixit patrem adfuisse*.
- 6.** He will say that his father was here, *dicet patrem adfuisse*.

These three cases take the perfect infinitive, because the words in direct discourse would be, "My father was here."

7. He says that his father will be here, *dicīt patrem adfuturum [esse]*.
8. He said that his father would be here, *dixīt patrem adfuturum*.
9. He will say that his father will be here, *dicet patrem adfuturum*.

In these cases, the words in direct discourse would be, "My father will be here." (In this tense, the *esse* is usually omitted.) In like manner, with verbs of *promising*, *expecting*, and the like —

10. He hopes to come (direct, "I shall come"), *sperat se venturum*.
11. He hopes that you are well, *sperat te valere*.
12. He hopes that you were there, *sperat te adfuisse*.
13. He threatened to destroy the city, *minatus est se urbem deleturum*.

d. When the verb of knowing, &c., is in the Passive, the impersonal construction is more common in English; but in Latin the personal is regular with the *simple* tenses, the impersonal with the *compound* (see § 330. a): as,

1. It seems to me that you are wrong, *videris mihi errare*.
2. It was reported that Cæsar's house had been attacked, *oppugnata domus Cæsaris nuntiabatur*.
3. There is a tradition that Homer was blind, *traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse*.

4. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative. But if the subject of the infinitive *is not expressed*, then any predicate word will agree with the subject of the main clause if there be a personal subject (see sec. 272, with Remarks): as,

1. It is advantageous to be honest, *utile est probum esse*.
2. I am anxious to be merciful, *cupio me esse clementem* (or *cupio esse clemens*).

N. B. Never translate the infinitive of Purpose by the infinitive in Latin (see hereafter, Lesson 25).

The English Infinitive and the clause with **THAT** are also often to be rendered by other constructions than the above (for which see hereafter, Lesson 28).

Exercise 20.

1. "You," said Scipio Æmilianus, "to whom Italy is not mother, but step-mother, ought to keep silence. Surely you do not think that I shall fear those let⁸ loose whom I sent in chains to the slave-market."

2. The king of Syria, Antiochus, had nearly conquered Egypt. Popilius Læna ordered him, in the name of the Senate, to abandon the country. Antiochus wished to deliberate; but Popilius, having traced¹ a circle¹ about the king with a staff which he held in his hand, "Before² leaving this circle," said he, "answer the Senate." Antiochus promised to obey, and went out of Egypt. Popilius then divided the kingdom between the two brothers Philometor and Physcon.

3. I purpose³ to write the history of a memorable revolution which has agitated men deeply, and which divides them even to-day. I do not conceal from myself the-difficulties-of-the-undertaking;⁴ for passions which it was thought were stifled under [the influence of] a military despotism have just been reawakened. Suddenly men overwhelmed with years and toil have felt revive⁵ in them resentments which seemed to be appeased, and have communicated them to us their children and heirs. But if we have-to-maintain⁶ the same cause, we-have-not⁷ to defend their conduct;

¹ Participle passive, ablative absolute (see next Lesson).

² *ante quam*, with pres. indic. ³ *in animo habere*.

⁴ Lit. "how difficult are (subj.) those things which I undertake."

⁵ Infinitive.

⁶ Part in *dus*, agreeing with *causa*.

⁷ *nihil opus est*.

⁸ Lit. "those will alarm me."

and we can separate liberty itself from those who have well or ill served it, while¹ we still have the advantage of-having-heard² and watched these old men, who, filled as-they-are³ with their memories still excited by their impressions, teach us to understand them.

4. The king entered the ship in a violent storm, which the mariners beholding-with-astonishment,⁴ at length with great humility gave him warning of the danger. But he commanded them instantly to put off, and not be afraid, for he had never in his life heard that any king was drowned.

¹ *cum*, with subj.

² *quod*, with indic.

³ *quidem*.

⁴ *admirari*.

Lesson 22.

Verbs. — 4. Participial Constructions.

1. LEARN §§ 289 to 292, with Remark on the uses of Participles. Also, §§ 293 and *a*; with 129 (Periphrastic Conjugations); 294, with *a*, *b*, *c*; and 255, with *a*, *b* (Ablative Absolute).

2. The English participle is often expressed not by a participle in Latin, but by a relative clause, or one with **cum** or **dum** (see § 290. *c*): as,

1. In the following winter, *ea quae secuta est hieme*.
2. Cæsar, seeing this, gave the signal for battle, *Caesar cum hoc vidisset signum dedit proelii*.
3. While humoring the young, I have forgotten that I am old, *dum obsequor adolescentibus, me senem esse oblitus sum*.

3. On the other hand, almost any simple modifying clause can be rendered in Latin in a participial form. This principle includes, among others, relative clauses,

and those introduced by *when, if, because, although*, together with many adverbial phrases.

a. If there is any word in the main clause to which the participle can be attached as a modifier, it usually agrees with it. This corresponds to the English use of participles, except that it is much more common.

1. Any evil is easily crushed at its birth, *omne malum nascens facile opprimitur.*
2. The enemy slay Valerius while fighting bravely, *Valerium hostes acerrime pugnantes occidunt.*

b. If there is no word to which the participle can be attached, the participle is put in the ablative, with some word in agreement, which serves as a kind of Subject (Ablative Absolute: see examples in "Method," p. 121).

c. Even what in English seems a separate clause is in Latin often crowded into the main clause in a participial form: as,

1. Our men followed them close—encumbered as they were—and cut them down, *quos impeditos nostri consecuti occiderunt.*
2. It is a wretched thing to fret yourself when it does no good, *miserum est nihil proficientem angere.*

d. The perfect active participle, which is missing in Latin, is supplied either (1) by a change of voice with the Ablative Absolute; or (2) by a clause with *cum* or *dum*. The difficulty is, however, often avoided by the use of Deponents, whose perfect participle usually has an active signification. Thus —

1. Having delayed a little, and set fire to all the villages, they pushed forward, *paulisper morati, omnibus vicis incensis, contenderunt.*
2. Having observed this, he sent the third line as a relief to our men who were in difficulty, *id cum animadvertisset, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.*

Exercise 21.

1. Veii was not succored by the other Etruscan cities then threatened with an invasion of the Gauls. Besides, the Veians had given themselves a king

instead of the annual magistrate, and a king odious to the other cities. This lucumo, irritated at¹ not having been named chief of the confederation, had stirred up the artisans, and violently interrupted the sacred games of Volsinii. On leaving for the siege of Veii, the Roman knights swore never to return, unless [they were] conquerors. This was also the vow of the Spartans on leaving for Ithome. On² the approach of the Roman army, the Veians left their city, clothed in funeral apparel, and bearing lighted torches. The city was taken by a mine. The besiegers, [who were] concealed in it³ near the temple of Juno, overheard the reply of an oracle, which the Etruscans had consulted. "Victory," said the priest, "shall be with⁴ him who shall sacrifice this heifer on the altar." Then the Roman soldiers burst into the temple, seized the axe from the priest's hand, and struck down the heifer; and the town, thus betrayed by its own gods, fell into the hands of the Romans.

2. The deputation arrived at Epidaurus the peculiar seat of Æsculapius, and invited the god to make his abode at Rome. Nor did he refuse; for one of the snakes sacred to Æsculapius crawled from his temple to the city of Epidaurus, and thence proceeded to the sea-shore, and climbed up into the ship of the Roman ambassadors [which was] drawn up on the beach. They now, instructed by the Epidaurians that the god willingly accompanied them, sailed away with the sacred snake to Italy. But when⁵ the ship stopped⁵ at Antium — so goes the story — the snake left⁶ [it and] crawled to the temple of Æsculapius

¹ Accusative with Infinitive. ² Ablative. ³ Relative.

⁴ Dative. ⁵ Lit. "the ship (acc.) stopping." ⁶ Participle.

in that city ; where he coiled himself round a tall palm-tree, and remained for three days. The Romans meanwhile anxiously awaited his return to the ship. At last he went¹ back [and] did not move again till the ship entered the Tiber. Then, when she came² to Rome, he again crawled forth, swam to the island in the middle of the Tiber, and there went on shore and remained quiet. A temple was built, therefore, to the god on the spot which he had himself chosen.

¹ Participle.

² Pluperf. subj. (impers.).

Lesson 23.

Verbs. — 5. Gerundive Constructions.

1. LEARN § 114. *a*, with §§ 295–301 (uses of the Gerund and Gerundive).

2. The English participial noun, or verbal in -ING, is represented in Latin in several different ways.

a. When it is subject or object, by the Infinitive (see Lesson 21), or *quod* with the Indicative ; rarely by a verbal noun : as,

1. Your being here is agreeable, *quod ades* (or *te adesse*) *gratum est*.

2. I prefer writing to speaking, *malo scribere quam loqui*.

b. In the other cases, most commonly by the Gerund or Gerundive ; less commonly by an Adverbial or Substantive Clause (see Lessons 25, 27) : as,

1. The labor of writing is irksome, *labor scribendi molestum est*.

2. A plan was formed for firing the city, *consilium inflammandae urbis intum est*.

3. I dissuaded him from going, *ne iret dissuasi*.

NOTE. — The Gerund and Gerundive are precisely equivalent in meaning. But the Gerundive, being in its origin a passive construction, can be used only of verbs which govern the accusative (except *utor*, &c.). When it can be used, it is generally to be preferred.

c. The phrase "without doing any thing," or the like, has no corresponding expression in Latin; but must be analyzed and rendered by some other form of words, chiefly a participle or the ablative absolute: as,

1. Without accomplishing his purpose, *re infecta*.
2. Without being compelled, *non coactus*.
3. He went away without doing this, *abiit neque hoc fecit*.
4. You shall not go without doing this, *non abibis nisi hoc feceris*.
5. I trod on a snake without knowing it, *anguem calcavi insciens* (or *inscien-ter*).

d. PURPOSE is often expressed in Latin by the accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive with *ad*, or by the Genitive followed by *causā* or *gratiā* (see hereafter, Lesson 26, and examples, Grammar, § 318).

Exercise 22.

1. When polished nations have obtained the glory of victory, or have enriched themselves by the addition-of¹ territory, they may² end the war with honor. But savages are not satisfied until they extirpate³ the community which is the object of their rage. They fight not to⁴ conquer, but to⁴ destroy. If they engage in hostilities, it is with a resolution never to-see⁵ the face of the enemy in peace, but to prosecute the war with immortal enmity. The desire of vengeance [is] the first and almost the only [principle which] a savage instils into the minds of [his] children.

2. Cato's opinion prevailed, and the Senate only waited for a favorable opportunity to-destroy⁵ the city. The Romans had resolved on war;⁶ and when the Carthaginian ambassadors arrived at Rome, to⁴ offer to the Senate the submission of Carthage, the two consuls were already levying troops. The ambassa-

¹ Gerundive. ² *licet*. ³ Perfect. ⁴ *ad*, with gerund.

⁵ Gen. of gerund. ⁶ *bello decertare statuerant*.

dors, knowing that resistance was hopeless, sought¹ to appease the anger of the Senate by unconditional obedience. They were ordered to send three hundred of the noblest families to [meet] the consuls at Lilybæum, and were told that the consuls would inform them of the further orders of the Senate.

3. Sulla, [when] quaestor in the war against-Jugurtha,² by his zeal and energy soon gained the full approval of [his] commander. He was equally successful in gaining the affections of the soldiers. He always addressed them with the greatest kindness, seized every opportunity of conferring favors upon them, was ever ready to³ take-part-in all the jests of the camp, and [at the same time] never shrank from sharing in all their labors and dangers. It is a curious circumstance that Marius gave to his future enemy and the destroyer of his family and party the first opportunity of distinguishing himself. The enemies of Marius claimed for Sulla the glory of the betrayal-of⁴ Jugurtha; and Sulla himself took the credit of it by always wearing a signet ring representing⁵ the [scene of the] surrender.

¹ *conor.*

² Adjective.

³ *ad*, with gerundive.

⁴ Perf. part.

⁵ Lit. "on which was represented."

Lesson 24.

Verbs. — 6. Subjunctive Constructions.

1. LEARN §§ 265, with *a*, *b*; 266–268 (uses of the Subjunctive); and 269, with *a* (Imperative Constructions).

2. The Subjunctive mood in Latin is used to represent a great variety of constructions in English, most

of which are included in the dependent clauses, to be given in future Lessons. The others are the following: —

a. The rare Subjunctive in English is for the most part rendered by the subjunctive in Latin (but compare special constructions in future Lessons). Thus —

1. Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall, *caveat qui stat ne cadat.*
2. I care not, so it serve the state, *nil mea refert dummodo rei publicae prosit.*
3. What would Cicero say if he were alive? *Quid diceret Cicero si viveret?*

b. The auxiliaries which form the English Potential — *may, might, could, would, should* — are very loose in their use and meaning, being sometimes pure auxiliaries, and sometimes retaining their proper force. In the former case they are generally rendered by the subjunctive in Latin; in the latter, they require some verb of similar meaning. Thus —

1. You may say (it is possible you should say), *dicas.*
2. You may say (you are permitted to say), *licet dicere.*
3. He would go if I should wish it, *eat si velim.*
4. He would go (now) if I wished it, *iret si vellem.*
5. You would have it so, *sic voluisti.*
6. I should like to go, *ire velim.*
7. I could wish he were here, *vellem adesset.*
8. A soldier should obey his commander, *miles imperatori parere debet.*
9. Whoever could go went, *quicumque ire poterat ivit.*
10. What could I do (what was I to do)? *Quid facerem?*
11. I wish he would come, *utinam veniat.*
12. Would he were now here! *O si nunc adesset!*

c. The English Imperative — except *commands in the second person* — is regularly rendered by the Latin subjunctive. Commands addressed to a definite person take the imperative in Latin; prohibitions to a definite person, 1. *noli*, with the infinitive; 2. *cave*, with the present subjunctive; 3. *ne*, with the perfect subjunctive. Thus —

1. Let us go, *eamus*.
2. Well, be it so, *flat sane*.
3. Let justice be done though the heavens fall, *flat justitia ruat caelum*.
4. Leap down, fellow-soldiers, *desilite, commilitones*.
5. Do not suppose, *nolite putare*.
6. Pardon nothing, do nothing by favor, be not moved by compassion, *nihil ignoveris, nihil gratiae causa feceris, misericordia commotus ne sis*.

d. General precepts, both affirmative and negative, are regularly expressed by the second person of the present subjunctive, less commonly the perfect.

e. There are many idiomatic constructions — more especially clauses of Result and clauses in Indirect Discourse — which in Latin require the subjunctive, though they have no modal form in English. (For these constructions, see hereafter, especially Lessons 26 and 28.)

Exercise 23.

1. "Let him go then," they said, "where he pleases as an exile, and suffer in some other place whatever fate has reserved for him; and let us pray that the gods visit us not with their anger, for rejecting Marius from our city in poverty and rags." Moved by such considerations, all in a body entered the room where Marius was, and getting round him, began to conduct him to the sea.

2. "Why," said Rasselas, "should you envy others so great an advantage? All skill ought to be exerted for universal good. Every man has owed much to others, and ought to repay the kindness that he has received."

3. Sweet language will multiply friends, and a fair-speaking tongue will increase kind greetings. Be in peace with many; nevertheless have but one counsellor of a thousand. If thou wouldest¹ get a friend, prove

¹ *volo*.

him first, and¹ be not¹ hasty² to credit him. For some³ man is a friend for⁴ his own occasion,⁴ and⁵ will not⁵ abide in the day of thy trouble.

4. My lords,⁶ if you must fall may you so fall. But if you stand — and stand I trust you will — together with the fortunes of this ancient monarchy, — together with the ancient laws and liberties of this great and illustrious kingdom, — may you stand as unimpeached in honor as in power. May you stand the refuge of afflicted nations! May you stand a sacred temple for the perpetual residence of an inviolable justice!

5. Believe me, Athenians! if, recovering from this lethargy, you would⁷ assume the ancient spirit and freedom of your fathers, the world might⁷ once more behold you playing a part worthy of Athenians! May the gods inspire you to determine upon such measures!

6. Lay hold on this chance of safety, Conscript Fathers! by the immortal gods I conjure you. Give one sign to the Roman people, that even as now they pledge their valor, so you pledge your wisdom to the crisis of the state. Do you not know this Antony? Do you not know his companions? To be slaves to such as he, to such as they, would it not be the fullest measure of misery, joined with the fullest measure of disgrace? If it be so — which heaven forfend! — that⁸ the supreme hour of the republic has come, let us, the rulers of the world, rather fall with honor than serve with infamy! Born to glory and to liberty, let us hold these bright distinctions fast, or let us greatly die!

¹ *neve.* ² Adverb. ³ *quispiam.* ⁴ *temporis causa.*

⁵ *nec.* ⁶ *Patres Conscripti.* ⁷ Pres. subj. ⁸ *ut*, with subj.

Lesson 25.

Relations of Time.

I. LEARN §§ 322-324; 325, with *b*; 326-328 (use of Temporal Particles); 283-286, with Remark (Sequence of Tenses).

REMARK.—Whenever it becomes necessary to use the Subjunctive mood in a subordinate clause—as in this and the following Lessons—careful attention must be paid to the rule for the Sequence of Tenses. The learner must notice carefully *which is the main clause*, i. e., *what is the main fact to be stated*. This is often disguised in English by one or more modifying clauses; especially Relative (WHO, WHICH), Temporal (WHEN), and Conditional (IF). Upon the time of the main clause will depend the time of the whole. Sometimes, however, an intervening dependent verb may throw the time back so as to require secondary tenses in those which follow, though the leading verb is primary. Thus—

1. Cicero is said to have gone into exile to prevent civil war, *Cicero ex patria excessisse dicitur ut bellum civile averteret.*
2. We seem to have advanced so far that even in fulness of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks, *tantum profecisse videmur ut a Graecis ne verborum quidem copia vinceremur.*

2. The English particle WHEN and similar expressions of time are rendered in Latin by two different constructions:—*a. ubi, postquam*, and similar particles (see 324) with the Indicative, usually the perfect; *b. cum*, generally with the Indicative of the present or perfect, and with the Subjunctive of the imperfect or pluperfect (325: see examples in Grammar).

REMARK.—The distinction between these two constructions is not at first obvious; but will become clearer by considering the distinction of Absolute and Relative time (see Note on page 234 of the Grammar), and by careful observation of the practice of Latin writers.

a. If WHEN is equivalent to WHENEVER, the Indicative is always to be used: as,

When midsummer had begun, he used to make his quarters at Syracuse, *cum aestas summa esse jam coeperat, Syracusis stativa faciebat.*

b. The common English form of narrative, "Such and such things had happened (were happening), WHEN," &c., is always to be rendered with the Indicative in Latin—usually with *cum*: as,

1. **This he had said when news was brought, *dixerat hoc cum nuntiatum est.***
2. **I was just reading your letters, when one was brought me, *legebam tuas epistolas, cum mihi epistola adfertur.***

c. If WHEN or WHILE approaches in meaning to SINCE (as it often does in fact), it is expressed by *cum* with the subjunctive; sometimes by other constructions (see Lesson 22): as,

But if you do not yet quite see—when the thing itself is plain by so many clear proofs and tokens, *quod si nondum satis cernitis—cum res ipsa tot tam claris argumentis signisque luceat.*

Exercise 24.

1. Hamilcar had poured the libation on the victim, which was duly offered on the altar; when on-a-sudden he desired¹ all the others to² step aside to a little distance, [and then] called his son Hannibal. Hannibal, a boy of nine years old, went up to his father, and Hamilcar asked him kindly whether² he would like² to go with him to the war. When the boy eagerly caught at the offer and with a child's earnestness implored his father to³ take him, Hamilcar took

¹ Participle.

² *velletne.*

³ *ut*, with subj.

him by the hand and led him up to the altar; and bade him, if he wished¹ to follow his father, to lay his hand on the altar, and swear that he would never be the friend of the Romans. Hannibal swore, and never to his latest hour forgot his vow.

2. When² Archias came to the door of the temple with his satellites, he found Demosthenes seated. He first addressed him in [language of] friendly persuasion, and offered to intercede with Antipater in his behalf. Demosthenes, having listened for-a-time in silence to his bland professions, at length replied, "Archias, you never won me by your acting, nor will you now by your promises." When the player found that he was detected, he threw away the mask and threatened in earnest. "Now,"³ said Demosthenes, "you speak from the Macedonian tripod: before you were only acting. Wait a little till I have written⁴ a letter to my friends at home." And he took a roll as if to write; and, as was his wont when he was engaged in composition, put the end of the reed to his mouth, and bit it; he then covered his head with his robe and bowed his head.

3. When he had remained some time in this attitude, the barbarians, thinking that he was lingering through fear, began to taunt him with cowardice; and Archias, going up, urged⁵ him to rise, and repeated his offers of mediation. Demosthenes now⁶ felt the poison in his veins: he uncovered his face, and fixing his eyes on the dissembler said, "It is time for you, Archias, to finish the part of Creon, and cast my body to the dogs. I quit thy sanctuary, Poseidon, still

¹ *si vellet.*² *ubi.*³ *nunc.*⁴ Future perfect.⁵ *petere ab eo ut.*⁶ *jam.*

breathing; though¹ Antipater and the Macedonians have not spared even this from pollution." So saying, he moved with-faltering-step towards the door; but had scarcely passed the altar, when he fell with a groan, and breathed his last.

¹ *cum*, with subj.

Lesson 26.

Purpose and Result.

I. READ carefully the Introductory Note on p. 227.

REMARK. — *a.* In general, Relative or other subordinate clauses are used in Latin nearly as in English. But in Latin the Subjunctive mood is used in many such clauses, where English uses the Indicative. It will be seen, therefore, that not every relative or other subordinate clause is to be translated by the Latin subjunctive; nor, on the other hand, is every English indicative in such clauses to be rendered by the indicative. The learner must, accordingly, accustom himself to notice the true (logical) relation between the subordinate and the main clause; and express the former according to the Latin idiom, which will appear in the subsequent Lessons.

b. When a relative clause (including those introduced by relative adverbs and conjunctions) simply states a fact or circumstance *which might be put as an independent statement*, there is no occasion for the subjunctive in Latin. But in most cases, where there is a logical relation between the two clauses, so that *the force of the relative clause would be lost* by taking it out of its connection with the former, the subjunctive is required in Latin.

N. B. Clauses expressing CAUSE — introduced in English by *because, since, inasmuch as* — take the subjunctive only in special idiomatic uses (see § 321).



c. The most common uses of the subjunctive in clauses of the kind above referred to are to express PURPOSE — *in order that, that, to, in order to*, and the like ; or RESULT — *so that, that, so as to*.

2. LEARN § 317 with 318 (clauses of Purpose) ; § 319 with *a, b* (clauses of Result) ; 320 and *a, e, f* (clauses of Characteristic).

3. In English, relations of purpose and result are often expressed by the Infinitive, *which must never be used in this way in Latin*.

a. The most general way of expressing Purpose is by *ut* (negatively *ne*), unless the purpose is *closely connected with some one word*, in which case the relative is more common. Thus —

1. *Arria gave her husband a sword in order that he might kill himself, Arria gladium dedit marito ut se interficeret.*

2. *Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself with, Arria gladium dedit marito quo se interficeret.*

b. The Gerundive constructions of Purpose are usually limited to short concise expressions, where the literal translation of the phrase, though not the English idiom, is nevertheless not harsh or strange.

c. The Supine in this construction is used only with verbs of motion and a few idiomatic expressions (see § 302). The Future Participle of Purpose should be avoided.

d. A kind of purpose is expressed idiomatically by the Gerundive used passively after particular verbs (see § 294. d').

e. In the greater number of cases Result is expressed by *ut* (negatively *ut non*), the relative being less common (compare examples in § 319).

f. The use of the Subjunctive in clauses of Characteristic (see § 320) can only be learned by practice and comparison of examples. But compare what is said above of Relative clauses in general.

g. Expressions such as "He is too honest to deceive," "It is too distant to be seen," and the like, which are very common in

English, are in Latin to be rendered by a clause of Result with *quam ut* following a Comparative: as,

Cæsar was too merciful to punish his adversaries, *clementior erat Cæsar quam ut inimicos puniret.*

Exercise 25.

1. On the reedy margin of the lake stood here and there some monuments; tombs, it was said,¹ of ancient Assyrian kings. As the royal galley, which Alexander steered himself, passed near one of them,² a sudden gust of wind carried away his cap into the water, and lodged⁷ the light diadem which circled it on one of the reeds which grew out of the tomb. One of the soldiers immediately swam out to recover it;² and, to keep it dry, placed it on his own head. Alexander rewarded him with a talent; but at the same time ordered him to be flogged for the thoughtlessness with which he had assumed³ the ensign of royalty. The diviners, it is said, took the matter more seriously, and advised the king to⁴ inflict death on the offender,⁵ in order to avert the omen.

2. Socrates recommends to Alcibiades, in order that he might have a model for his devotions, a short prayer which a Greek poet composed for the use of his friend in-the-following-words:⁶ "O Jupiter! give us those things which are good for us, whether they are such things as we pray for or such things as we do not pray for; and remove from us those things which are hurtful, though they are such things as we pray for."

3. Polybius also learned the Roman tongue, and attained to that knowledge of their laws, their rights, their customs and antiquities, that few of their own

¹ *dicebant.*

² Relative.

³ Subjunctive.

⁴ *ut*, with subj. ⁵ *homo.* ⁶ *ita.* ⁷ *demitto.*

citizens understood them better. So that he taught the noblemen of Rome their own municipal laws; and was accounted more skilful in them than Fabius Pictor, a man of the senatorial order, who wrote the transactions of the Punic wars. He who neglected none of the laws of history was so careful of truth that he made it his whole business to deliver nothing to posterity which might deceive them; and by that diligence and exactness may be known to be studious of truth and a lover of it.

4. The Pompeians were too much dispirited to make any resistance. Shivered once more at the first onset, they poured in broken masses over hill and plain. But Cæsar was not yet satisfied. Allowing a part of his troops only to return to the camp, he led four legions in hot pursuit by a shorter and better road, and drew them up at a distance of six miles from the field of battle.

¹ *qua diligentia ac cura.*

Lesson 27.

Conditional Sentences.

READ carefully pages 214-226, including all the sub-sections, and committing to memory the types of conditional expressions on pages 216, 217.

a. The learner should notice carefully the precise nature of the condition which he wishes to render into Latin, because the use of the tenses in English is not uniform. Thus, — “If he is alive now” is a present condition, to be expressed in Latin by the Present Indicative; “If he is alive next year” is a future condition, and would be expressed by the Future Indicative. “If he were here now” is a present condition contrary to fact, and would be expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive; “If he were to see me thus” is a future condition, to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive.

b. In cases where the Condition is omitted, it must be mentally supplied in order to determine the form of the condition.

c. The conditional phrases of Comparison, *as if, as though*, require in Latin the present and perfect subjunctive, not the imperfect and pluperfect, as in English (see Remark under § 312).

d. For the Concessive expressions, *although, granting that, even if*, which require idiomatic constructions in Latin, see § 313. For Provisos — *provided that, only let, &c.* — see § 314.

Exercise 26.

1. Among the savages, to display undaunted fortitude in torments is the noblest triumph of a warrior. To avoid the trial by a voluntary death is deemed infamous and cowardly. If any one betrays symptoms of timidity, they often despatch him at once with contempt, as unworthy of-being-treated¹ like a man.

2. If we see a friend in distress, and give him all the consolation we are able, we perform the duties of friendship, which pays more attention to the disposition of the heart than to the value of the gift. A small present may be the testimony of a great love. There is no good I do not wish you, and this is all I can offer toward it. I wish this little treatise may be of use to you. If it should not answer my hopes, I shall, however, be secure of pardon from your friendship.

3. I am come to inform² you of a secret you must impart to Pausanias alone. From remote antiquity, I am of Grecian lineage. I am solicitous for the safety of Greece. Long since, but for the auguries, would Mardonius have given battle. Regarding these no longer, he will attack you early in the morning. Be prepared. If he change his purpose, remain as you are. He has provisions only for a few days more.

¹ See § 320. *f.*

² See § 287. *a.*

Should the event of the war prove favorable, you will but deem it fitting to make some effort for the independence of one who exposes himself to so great peril for the purpose of apprising you of the intentions of the foe. I am Alexander of Macedon.

4. After a short interval, Charles, turning to Philip, who stood awaiting his commands, thus addressed him: "If the vast possessions which are now bestowed on you had come by inheritance, there would be abundant cause for gratitude. How much more, when they come as a free gift in the life-time of your father! But however large the debt,¹ I shall consider it all repaid if you only discharge your duty to your subjects. So rule over them that men shall commend and not censure me for the part I am now acting."

5. We are here as in a theatre, where every one has a part allotted to him. The great duty which lies upon a man is to act his part in perfection. We may² indeed say that our part does not suit us, and that we could act another better. But this is not our business. All that we are concerned in is to excel in the³ part which is given us. If it be an improper one, the fault is not in us, but in Him who has cast our several parts, and is the great disposer of the drama.

¹ *beneficium*.

² *possumus*.

³ Plural.

Lesson 28.

Substantive Clauses.

I. READ carefully §§ 329, with Note; 330, 331, with *a, b, c, d, e, f* (substantive clauses of Purpose); 332, with *a, b, c, d, g, h* (clauses of Result); 333, and

b (clauses with *quod*). Compare §§ 270, 271, and notice the general schedule of substantive clauses on page 239.

2. In English, one action depending upon another is in almost any case expressed indiscriminately by **THAT** or by the Infinitive. In Latin the form of expression will depend on *the meaning of the dependent words or clause*. This meaning can usually be determined by the following Rules:—

a. If the words can be put in an independent form *as the words of some person in the Indicative*, it is Indirect Discourse, and requires the Accusative with the Infinitive (see examples in § 330).

b. If they can be put in an independent form *as a Question*, they require the Subjunctive as Indirect Questions (see examples in § 334).

c. If they can be put in an independent form *as the words of some person in the Imperative*, or can be conceived as a Result, they require the Subjunctive. The Infinitive is used in many expressions of this class, either optionally or exclusively (see examples in §§ 331, 332).

d. If they could be expressed independently in the Indicative, but *as a fact*, and not as the words of some other person, they regularly require *quod* with the Indicative (see examples in § 333).

e. An English noun must often be rendered by a substantive clause, on account of the scarcity of abstract terms in Latin, or the want of a corresponding idiom. Thus —

1. **He was accused of treason against his country, *accusatus est quod patriam prodidisset*.**
2. **A value beyond all estimation, *pretium majus quam ut aestimetur*.**

f. In English a real substantive clause is often introduced by the common expression **FOR** with the Infinitive; and is usually rendered in Latin by the Accusative and Infinitive: **ut** with the subjunctive is more rare. The meaning of the particular expression must be carefully noticed. Thus —

1. For a dying father to bequeath an empire to his son is a deed worthy of gratitude, *patrem morientem filio imperium legare factum est gratia dignum.*
2. The next thing is for me to speak of the war against the pirates, *reliquum est ut de bello dicam piratico.*

NOTE. — The forms of Indirect Discourse were developed in Latin into a very complex system, which, for the sake of fuller practice, will be exhibited in the two succeeding Lessons.

Exercise 27.

1. But before Cæsar allowed his tired soldiers to enjoy the fruits of the victory of Pharsalia he required them to complete the conquest. The pursuit was continued during the remainder of the day and on the morrow. But the task was easy.¹ The clemency of the conqueror induced all to submit. When Cæsar entered the camp, and saw the dead bodies of many Romans lying about, he exclaimed, "They would have it so. To have laid down our arms would have sealed our doom."

2. The soldiers of Viriathus recognized their general simply by his tall figure, and by his striking sallies of wit, and above all by the fact that he surpassed every one of his men in temperance as well as in toil.

3. The sailors were willing to do as he wished. But they were afraid that the vessel could not stand the beating of the waves, and as Marius also was much troubled with sickness, they made for land. They wandered about without any definite object, seeking merely to escape from the present evil as worst of all, and putting their hopes on the chances of fortune. For the land was their enemy, and the sea also; and they feared² to fall in with men, and

¹ Lit. "not difficult."

² Notice construction of verbs of fearing (§ 331. f).

feared also not to fall in with men, because they were in want of provisions. After some time they met with a few herdsmen, who had nothing to give them in their need. But they recognized Marius, and advised him to get out of the way as quick as he could.¹

4. Griselda, it is now time for you to reap the fruit of your long patience; and that they who have reported me to be cruel, unjust, and a monster in nature,² should know that what I have done has been all along with a view to teach you how to behave as a wife, and lastly to secure my own ease and quiet as long as we live³ together, which I feared might have been endangered by my marriage. Therefore I had a mind⁴ to prove you by harsh and injurious treatment; and not being aware that you have ever transgressed my will, either in word or deed, I now seem to have met with that happiness I desired. I intend then to restore in an hour what I have taken away from you in many; and to make you the sweetest recompense for the many bitter pangs I have caused you to suffer.

¹ Subjunctive.

² *ingenio*.

³ Subjunctive.

⁴ *mihi propositum habui*.

Lesson 29.

Intermediate Clauses.

LEARN §§ 340, 341. *a, b, c, d*; 342 (Intermediate clauses). Compare § 336, and *b* (Subordinate clauses in Indirect Discourse).

REMARK. — Besides the constructions of dependent clauses already mentioned (which for the most part are suggested by some particle or some construction in English), another is found in Latin, which has no English equivalent whatever: namely, that of a clause subordinate to another *which is itself*

subordinate. This is especially to be observed when any one of the Infinitive and Subjunctive expressions which have been treated under the head of substantive clauses — itself the subject or object of some leading verb — has another clause depending on it. In this case, the verb of the latter is almost invariably in the subjunctive. But, in applying the rule, the following conditions must be observed : —

a. When a subordinate clause depends on an infinitive or subjunctive, *so that it becomes logically a part of the same expression*, its verb must regularly be in the Subjunctive (see examples in § 342).

N. B. This rule does not apply to the case of a simple relative clause following a *complementary infinitive*, which will generally come under the following head.

b. If the subordinate clause is inserted for mere definition or explanation — so that it may be regarded as *true independently of the connection in which it stands* — its verb will be in the Indicative (see examples under § 336. *b*).

c. When a clause, though not depending on an infinitive or subjunctive, is represented as containing the words or thought of any other person than the writer or speaker, so that it becomes informal indirect discourse, the verb must be in the Subjunctive (see examples under § 341).

NOTE. — This construction is especially common in clauses expressing a reason or motive, which otherwise do not take the subjunctive.

d. A subordinate clause in a Conditional sentence will have the mood and tense of the principal verb.

Exercise 28.

1. Sulla, encouraging his soldiers, who were 35,000 men well armed, led them to Rome. The soldiers fell on the tribunes whom Marius had sent and murdered them. Marius also put to death many friends of Sulla in Rome, and proclaimed freedom to the slaves if they would join¹ him. But it is said that only three slaves accepted the offer.

¹ See *c*, above.

2. The next day Marius, compelled by hunger, and wishing to make use of his remaining strength before he was¹ completely exhausted, went along the shore, encouraging his followers, and entreating them not to abandon the last hope, for which he reserved² himself on the faith of an old prediction. For when he was quite a youth, and living in the country, he caught in his garment an eagle's nest as it was falling down,³ with seven young ones [in it] ; which his parents wondering at, consulted the soothsayers, who told them that their son would become the most illustrious of men, and that it was [the will of] fate that he should receive the supreme command and magistracy seven times.

3. His attendants advised him to wait until he had made preparations of men and money. To which he only returned, "They that love me will follow me." In a few days he drove the enemy from before the city, and took the count prisoner ; who, raging at his defeat and calamity, exclaimed, "that this blow was from fortune ; but valor could make reprisals, as he should show, if he ever regained his liberty."

4. When with infinite toil they had climbed up the greater part of that steep ascent, Balboa commanded his men to halt, [and] advanced alone to the summit, that he might be the first who should enjoy a spectacle which he had so long desired.⁴ As soon as he beheld the South Sea stretching in endless prospect below him, he fell on his knees, and, lifting up his hands to heaven, returned thanks to God, who had conducted⁵ him to a discovery so beneficial to his country and so honorable to himself.

¹ See *a*, above.

² See *b*, above.

³ *ad terram*.

⁴ See *c*, above.

⁵ See *b*, above.

Lesson 30.

Indirect Discourse.

READ §§ 335-339, throughout (Indirect Discourse), noticing carefully the Remark on page 248.

REMARK.—1. The Indirect Discourse in Latin corresponds to the common reporting of speeches, &c., in the newspapers and elsewhere, in which the *pronouns* and the *tenses of the verb* are changed, and the whole quotation is usually introduced by *THAT*, following a verb of saying, &c. This form of discourse is much more common and highly developed in Latin than in English, and may often be used in rendering the English direct narrative or quotation. Many difficulties and obscurities are avoided in Latin by the use of the reflexive pronoun, to refer to the speaker, and of the Indicative and Subjunctive moods as given in § 336. The rule defining the employment of these moods is as follows:—

a. The main clauses (statements) have their verbs in the Infinitive with the subject in the Accusative, as SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES dependent on the verb of *saying*, &c.

b. Dependent clauses, introduced by relatives, relative or conditional particles, and the like, have their verbs in the Subjunctive, as INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

c. Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive.

N. B. For special indirect forms see §§ 337, 338.

d. The Subject of the verb must regularly be expressed in indirect discourse, though a pronoun omitted in the direct. References to the speaker must be made by the reflexives *se* and *sua*.

e. Repetitions of some verb of *saying*, &c., which are common in English for the sake of keeping up the form of indirect discourse, should be omitted in Latin.

f. Particular attention should be given in translating the *apodosis contrary to fact*, which is done by the future participle with *fulsae* (see examples in § 308. *d*).

7. Sequence of Tenses is very often violated in indirect discourse for the sake of greater vividness, by the use of primary instead of secondary tenses, — but never in a narrative clause with *cum*.

2. An Indirect Question includes all the cases where an interrogative clause, or one introduced by an interrogative word (*who? where? whether*, and the like) is made the subject or object of a verb or of some equivalent phrase. As most interrogatives, both in English and Latin, have the same form with the relatives, care must be taken to distinguish them by noticing whether there is an Antecedent, expressed or implied, which is the distinguishing mark of the Relative.

N. B. For other interrogative forms see §§ 210–212.

Exercise 29.

1. When I came to the foot of the hill, I met with a very aged man, who asked me what I was and whither bound. I told him that I was a pilgrim going to the celestial city. Then said the old man, "Thou lookest like an honest fellow. Wilt thou be content to dwell with me for the wages that I shall give thee?" Then I asked him his name, and where he dwelt. He said his name was Adam the first, and that he dwelt in the town of Deceit. I asked him then what was his work, and what the wages that he would give. He told me that his work was many delights, and his wages, that I should be his heir at last.

2. His resolution was immediately formed. He rose and called together the officers of Proxenus, and addressed them. After¹ having pointed out the magnitude of the evils which they had to apprehend, unless some provision were made without delay for their defence, he dexterously turned their attention to

¹ *cum*.

a more animating view of the situation. "Ever since they had concluded the treaty with Tissaphernes, he had observed with envy and regret the rich possessions of the barbarians, and had lamented that his comrades had bound themselves to abstain from the good things which they saw within their reach, except¹ so far as they were able to purchase a taste² of them at an³ expense which he had feared would soon exhaust their scanty means."

3. I fancy, Cephalus, that people do not generally acquiesce in these views of yours, because they think that it is not your character but your great wealth that enables you to bear with old age. For the rich, it is said, have many consolations. "True," he said, "they will not believe me; and they are partly right, though not so right as they suppose. There is great truth in the reply of Themistocles to the Seriphian, who tauntingly-told-him⁵ that his reputation was due not to himself but to his country. 'I should not have become famous if I had been a native of Seriphus, neither would you if [you had been] an Athenian.'"

4. I will tell you [a tale of] what happened once to a brave man, Er, son of Armenius, a native of Pamphylia. His story was,⁴ that when the soul had gone out of him, it travelled in company with many others, till they came to a mysterious place, in which were two gaps adjoining one another in the earth, and exactly opposite them two gaps above in the heaven. Between these gaps sat judges, who, after passing sentence, commanded the just to take the road to the right, upwards through the heaven; while the unjust were ordered to take the road downwards, to the left.

¹ *praeterquam quae.*

⁴ *dico.*

² *pauca.*

⁵ *exprobare.*

³ *tantus.*

Lesson 31.

Certain Special Constructions.

1. READ carefully §§ 332. *c*, and 274 (Exclamatory clauses); 332. *d* (*tantum abest ut*, etc.); 332. *e*, comparing 288. *f* (*facere ut*); 332. *g*, and 319. *c*, *d* (*quin*, *quominus*); 292. *c* (Perfect Participle with *habeo*); 317. *c*, with Remark (disguised Purpose); 211, with *a*, *b*, *d* (Double Questions); 308. *b*, *c*, *d*; 307. *d*; 311. *c* (Indicative used in conditions instead of the Subjunctive).

2. Some constructions which belong logically under the preceding heads have special idiomatic uses in Latin. Such are the following:—

a. The English exclamations, “The idea that!” “To think that!” “That!” and the like, referring to *something which has actually happened*, are expressed by the Accusative and Infinitive, usually with the enclitic *ne*. When referring to *something anticipated* or to a *mere idea*, by *ut* with the subjunctive, usually also with *-ne*: as,

1. To think that you should have fallen into such grief for me! *te in tantas aerumnas propter me incidisse!*
2. What! I interrupt you? *egone ut te interpelllem?*

b. English expressions, like “Far from,” or “So far from,” with a following clause, are rendered in Latin by *tantum abest*, followed by two clauses with *ut*. The former clause is always the subject of *abest*, which has not a personal subject, as in English; the latter clause is always one of Result, not an independent clause, as it often is in English (see examples in Grammar).

c. Such phrases as “To allow one’s self to,” “manage to,” “act in any way in doing a thing,” are expressed in Latin by *facere* or *committere*, with an *ut*-clause as object. So also where verbs want the future infinitive, *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* is used.

d. Expressions implying Hindrance, usually (but not always) followed in English by FROM with the participial noun, take in Latin a subjunctive clause with **quominus** (rarely **ne**). If the hindering is **NEGATIVED**, **quin** may be used instead. The same construction is used in Latin with verbs of *refusing*. Expressions like "Not to doubt **THAT** (*but that*)" are regularly followed by **quin**. The accusative with infinitive is to be avoided. "To doubt whether," introduces an Indirect Question, and is so to be treated. "To hesitate" is expressed by the same verb (**dubito**), but with a different construction — the simple Infinitive.

e. The English HAVE, with a participle, is sometimes a mere auxiliary, corresponding to the Perfect in Latin. Sometimes, however, it retains a slight notion of *possession*, and is then to be translated literally, with **habeo** or **teneo**. Thus —

1. I have guarded the prisoners, **captivos custodit**. But —
2. I have the prisoners guarded (under guard), **captivos habeo custoditos**.

f. Parenthetical expressions, like "To be brief," "To say no more," "So to speak," are really expressions of Purpose, and are to be so treated in Latin : as,

Not to be tedious, the enemy were beaten and put to flight,
ne longus sim, hostes pulsi et fugati sunt.

N. B. As this expression is elliptical, the sequence of tenses is disregarded.

g. For the treatment of Double or Alternative Questions, consult the forms in the Grammar (§ 211).

h. In stating the *propriety*, *possibility*, and the like, of a future action, or one that has not been performed at all, Latin employs the Indicative, expressing it (as it were) as a general truth, where English uses the Potential, treating it as a particular case. For example —

1. It would be tedious to follow up the matter, **longum est rem persequi**.
2. It would befit us to mourn (but we do not), **nos decebat lugere**.
3. How much better would it have been! **Quanto melius fuerat !**

Exercise 30.

1. I do not doubt that you fully agree with me regarding the motives and the consequences of Cæsar's murder. I, for my part, cannot avoid feeling both sorrow and indignation, whether ¹ I consider the victim or ¹ the assassins in that great crime. Whatever may have been the ambitions or the vices of his earlier public or private life, they cannot prevent us from regarding his death at this time as the most serious calamity to the Roman people, or from condemning and execrating the infamous conspiracy that slew him. Not to speak of the glory and empire won to Rome by his victories, he was the first conqueror in civil war who refused to make it an occasion of massacre and revenge. Far from following the example of violence which the partisans of Pompey had threatened, he had ² disciplined and controlled his forces, so as effectually to check the fury of slaughter or the lust of plunder. At least, his mercy to his enemies, after the victory at Pharsalia, should have ³ forbidden all thoughts of private resentment. [To think] that Marcus Brutus, whom he not only had spared on the field of battle and in the hostile camp, but even called his son, should strike the deadliest blow against him! that Cicero, who had so lately extolled with fulsome praise ⁴ his pardon ⁵ of Marcellus, should with yet greater fervor have gloried in the manner of his death! Was it the hope of real liberty, or was it jealousy of his more vigorous genius and more dazzling glory?

¹ *sive.*

² *habeo.*

³ *debuerat.*

⁴ *effusis laudibus efferre.*

⁵ Clause with *quod.*

2. But the death of Cæsar could not cause¹ true and lasting freedom to exist in a city which had beheld the murder of Gracchus, the massacres of Marius, the proscriptions of Sulla, the profligacy of Catiline, the violence of Clodius! The wicked act² of his enemies did not hinder Rome from becoming subject to the tyranny of a Cæsar; it did prevent it from enjoying a firm peace and an enlightened rule under the ancient forms of the commonwealth. It kindled again the fury of civil war. It destroyed the remnant of those ancient families and the authority of the Senate, which had made the glory of Rome. It extinguished the freedom of debate, and all confidence among men. It committed the destiny of the Republic to the hands of Mark Antony and Octavianus. It removed the mighty Julius, to prepare the way for Tiberius, Caligula, and Nero.

¹ Lit. "bring it to pass that," &c.

² *facinus*.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — In using this Vocabulary, it should be borne in mind that the Latin terms here given are not in all cases the best or even the ordinary equivalent of the English words, but such as appear to be best suited to the passages where these occur. They need not, therefore, prevent the use of such other terms as may be preferred. In selecting the right word, where several are given, it will often be necessary to consult the Latin lexicon. For numerals, reference should be had to the Grammar. Where numbers occur, they may be *written* in Roman numerals, but should always be *read* in full, as Latin words.

The small figures mark the conjugations of the verbs. In general, the gender only of the less usual forms of nouns is given, and in verbs only those principal parts which are required. Adjectives in *us*, when not otherwise marked, are to be declined like *bonus*.

A.

A, an, usually omitted; a certain, *quidam* (p. 18).

abandon, *relinquo, amitto* (lose).

abide, *maneo*,² *mansi*.

abode, to make, *habito*.¹ [*circa*.

about (here and there), *passim*;

above, *supra* (acc.), *insuper*;

above all, *maxime*.

abroad, to get, *emano*.¹

abstain, *tempero*,¹ *se abstinere*.

abundance, *abundantia, ae*.

abundant, *satis* (with gen.).

abuse (v.), *abutor*,³ *usus*.

academy, *academia, ae*.

accept, *accipio*,³ *cepi*.

accompany, *comitor*.¹

account (v.), *habeo*,² *existimo*.¹

account, on — of, *ob, propter*

(acc.); it is of —, *interest* (see

§ 50, 4. d.). (See p. 29).

accuse, *accuso*.¹

accustomed, to be, *soleo*,² *solitus*.

achieve, *gero*,³ *gessi*.

acquiesce, *consentior*,⁴ *sensus*.

Acron, *Acron, onis*.

across, *trans* (acc.).

act (n.), *factum, facinus, oris*.

act, *ago*² *ēgi*; — a part, *partes*

agere, tueri; — as, *esse prō*.

acting, *actio in scena*.

actor, *actor, oris*; *histrion*.

Adam, *Adamus, i*.

add, *addo*.³

addition of territory, *fines promoti, propagati*.

adjoining, *conjunctus, proximus*.

address, *adloquor*,³ *appello*.¹

admire, *miror*.¹

advance, *progredior*,³ *gressus*.

advantage, *utilitas, atis*; I have

the — of, *me adjuvat quod*.

advise, *hortor*,¹ *moneo*.¹

affair, *res, rei* (F.).
 affection, *amor*; affections, *animi*.
 afflicted, *adfectus*.
 afraid, to be, *timeo*,² *ui*.
 after, *post*; conj. *postquam*.
 afterwards, *postea*.
 again, *iterum, rursus, postea*.
 against, *contra, adversus* (acc.).
 Agamemnon, *Agamemnon, ōnis*, acc. *ōna*.
 age, *aetas, atis* (F.).
 aged, *confectus* (*profectus*) *aetate, longaevus*.
 agitate, *commoveo*,³ *movi*.
 ago, *abhinc*.
 agree, *adsentior*⁴ (dat.).
 agreeable, *gratus, a, um*.
 aid, *auxilium, i*.
 air (music), *cantus, ūs*.
 alarm, *terreo*,² *ui*.
 alarmed, *territus* (abl.), *sollicitus*; — for, *metuens* (dat.).
 alas, *vae!*
 Alcibiades, *Alcibiades, is*.
 all, *omnis, e* (whole), *totus, solus* (gen. *ius*).
 all in a body, *universi*.
 allied, *conjunctus*.
 allot, *tribuo*,² *ui, utum*.
 allow, *potestatem dare* (dat.).
 ally, *socius, i*.
 almost, *fere, paene*.
 along, *praeter*. — alone, *solus*.
 along with, *una cum*.
 already, *jam*.
 also, *quoque*.
 altar, *ara, ae*.
 although, *quanquam*.
 altogether, *omnino*.
 always, *semper*.
 ambassador, *legatus, i*.

ambition, *ambitio, onis*; *cupiditas, atis* (F.).
 ambitious, *ambitiosus*.
 among, *inter* (acc.); sometimes expressed by dat.; *apud*.
 ancestor, *proavus, i, auctor generis*; pl., *majores, um*.
 ancient, *antiquus, vetus, eris*.
 and, *et, -que* (enclitic), *atque*.
 anger, *ira* (visit with, *persequi*).
 animal (wild), *fera, ae* (F.); the lower animals, *bestiae*.
 animating, *laetus*.
 answer, *respondeo*,² *di, sum*.
 annual, *annuus, sollemnis*.
 Antipater, *Antipater, tri*.
 antiquities, *antiquitas, atis* (F.).
 anxiety, *sollicitudo, inis* (F.).
 anxious, *sollicitus*.
 any, *ullus, ullo modo*; — one, *quisquam, quivis* (p. 18); does any? *num quis?*
 Apennines, *Apenninus* (sc. *mons*), *i* (M.).
 apparel, *vestitus, ūs*; in funeral —, *sordide vestitus*.
 appear, *appareo*,² *ui*; *videor*.²
 appease, *lenio*,⁴ *placo*.¹
 apply (for aid), *se conferre, peto*.
 apprehend, *metuo*.³
 apprise, *doceo*.²
 appoint, *praeficio* (acc., dat.).
 appointed (to head), *praefectus datus*.
 approach (n.), *adventus, ūs*.
 approval, *gratia, ae*.
 arbitration, *arbitrium, i*.
 arbitrator, *arbiter, tri*.
 archbishop, *archiepiscopus, i*.
 arduous, *arduus*.
 Argos, *Argi, orum*.

aristocracy, *nobilitas*, *atis*.
 arm (v.), *armo*.¹
 armed, *armatus*.
 arms (weapons), *arma*, *orum*.
 army, *exercitus*, *ūs*.
 arrival, *adventus*, *ūs*.
 arrive, *pervenio*,⁴ *advenio*.⁴
 arrogance, *arrogantia*, *ae*.
 arrow, *sagitta*, *ae*.
 art, *ars*, *tis* (F.).
 artificial, *artificiosus*.
 artisan, *opifex*, *icis*.
 Aruns, *Aruns*, *Aruntis*.
 as, *ut*; (when), *cum*, *pro*.
 as . . as, *tam quam*, *aeque ac*.
 as if, as it were, *tanquam*.
 ascent, *ascensus*, *ūs*.
 ashamed, to be, *pudere* (impers).

§ 50, 4. c).

aside, *se-* (verb-prefix).
 ask, *rogo*,¹ *quaero*, *peto* (ab).
 assassin, *sicarius*, *i*.
 assassinate, *interficio*,³ *occido*.³
 assistance, *auxilium*, *i*.
 assume, *sumo*,³ *adrogo*.¹
 assumed, *simulatus*.
 Assyrian, *Assyrius*.
 at, with name of town, see p. 41;
 near (not in), *apud*, *ad*; as
 cause (as "alarmed at"), *abl*.;
 at all, *omnino*; at once, *statim*.
 Athenian, *Atheniensis*, *e*.
 Athens, *Athenae*, *arum*.
 attached to, *conjunctus cum*.
 attack, *aggredior*,³ *oppugno*.¹
 attain, *adsequor*.³
 attempt (v.), *conor*.¹
 attempt (n.), *conatus*, *ūs* (M.).
 attend, *comitor*; ¹ to — the ses-
 sion of the Senate, *in Sena-*
 tum ire.

attendant, *socius*, *comes*.
 attention, to pay, *specto*; ¹ to
 turn, *animum revocare* (ad).
 attitude, *status*, *ūs*.
 attractive, *jucundus*.
 audacious, *audax*, *acis*.
 augury, *augurium*, *i*.
 authority, *auctoritas*, *atis* (F.).
 avenge, *ulciscor*,³ *ultus*.
 avert, *averto*, *ti*, *sum*.³
 avoid, *fugio*,³ *fugi*, *evito*; ¹ I
 cannot —, *non possum non*.
 await, *expecto*.¹
 awake, *e somno excitare*.
 aware, to be, *animadvertere*.
 away, to be, *abesse*.
 awhile, *aliquamdiu*.
 axe, *securis*, *is* (F.).

B.

babe, *infans*, *tis*.
 banish, *pello*,³ *pepuli*, *pulsum*;
 expello.³
 bank, *ripa*, *ae*.
 bar (v.), *claudio*.³
 barbarian, *barbarus*.
 barbarously, *saeve*.
 barren of, to be, *careo*,² *ui*
 (*abl*).
 battle, *proelium*, *i* (N.); *pugna*,
 ae (F.); field of battle, *acies*,
 ei (F.), *locus ubi pugnatur*.
 bay, *sinus*, *ūs*.
 be, *sum* (see paradigms of com-
 pound tense) ; to be so, *ita se*
 habere; — able, *posse*.
 beach, *litus*, *ōris* (N.).
 bear, *fero*, *ferre*, *tuli*, *latum*.
 bear up, *sustineo*,³ *ui*.

- bear no relation to, *nihil at-
tinere ad*.
 beard, *barba, ae*.
 beast, wild, *fera, ae*.
 beating, *vis, vis* (F.).
 beautiful, *pulcher, a, um*.
 beauty, *species, ei, forma, ae*.
 because, *quia*.
 become, *fiō, fieri* (or passive).
 before, *ante, antehac, ante-
quam*.
 begin, *incipio, cepi; coepi*.
 beginning, *initium, i*.
 behalf, in, *pro* (abl.).
 behave, *se gerere*.
 behind, *post*; go behind, *se-
quor*.³
 behold, *contueor, video, conspicio*.
 believe, *credo* ³ (dat.).
 belong, *esse* (with gen. or dat.);
pertineo, ui (ad).
 bench, *subsellium, i*.
 beneath, *subter, sub*.
 beneficent, *beneficus* (use su-
perl.).
 beneficial, *utilis, e*.
 besides, *praeter, praeterea* (adv.).
 besiege, *oppugno*.¹
 besiegers, *obsidentes*.
 best, *optimus*; (adv.) *optime*,
maxime; (of two) *magis*.
 bestow, *dono*.¹
 betray, *prodo, ostendo* ³ (show).
 better, *melior, us*.
 between, *inter* (acc.).
 b'd, *jubeo, jussi*.
 bind, *obligo*.¹
 bird, *avis, is* (F.).
 birth, by, *natu*.
 bite, *mordeo, momordi*.
 bitter, *acerbus*.
 bitterly, *vehementer*.
 blame, *culpa, ae*.
 bland, *blandus*.
 blast, of music, *clangor, oris*
 (M.).
 blow (a blast of an instrument),
edo.³
 blow, *ictus, ūs* (M.); *plaga, ae*
 (F.), *vulnus, eris* (N.).
 boar, *aper, apri*.
 boast, *glorior, praedico* ¹ de.
 bodily gifts, *bona corporis*.
 body, *corpus, oris* (N.); of men,
agmen, inis (N.).
 bolster-up, *subvenio* ⁴ (dat.).
 bondage, *servitus, utis* (F.).
 book, *liber, bri* (M.).
 booty, *praeda, ae*.
 borders, *fines, ium* (M.).
 born, *natus*; to be —, *nascor*.³
 both, *uterque, utraque, utrum-
que*, gen. *utriusque*; both . .
 and, *et . . et*.
 bound, *obligatus*; to be going
 anywhere, *tendere*.
 bow one's head, *se inclinare*.
 boy, *puer, eri*.
 brave, *fortis, e*.
 break, *frango, fregi, fractum*.
 break up, *confringo*.
 breathe, *exspiro; animam
efflare*, to breathe one's last.
 breathing, *spiritum ducens*.
 breeze, *aura, ae*.
 bribe (v.), *corrumpto, rupi, rup-
tum*.
 bribes (n.), *dona, orum*.
 bribery, *ambitus, ūs* (M.).
 bridge, *pons, pontis* (M.).
 bright, *clarus*; — distinctions,
praeclara.

brilliant, *clarus, insignis, e, splendidus*.
 bring, *adfero, irr., porto,¹ duco, perduco;²* — to an end, *conficio;³* — to pass, *efficio.³*
 broken, *fractus, turbatus*.
 brother, *frater, tris* (M.); — in-law, *uxoris frater*.
 brutality, *immanitas, atis* (F.).
 brute, *bestia, ae* (F.).
 build, *aedifico;¹* military works, roads, &c., *munio.⁴*
 building, *aedificium, i*.
 bulk, *magnitudo, inis* (F.).
 bull, *taurus, i*.
 burn (v.), *ardeo,² si*.
 burst, *inrumpo.³*
 business, *negotium, res*; make it one's —, *operam ponere in*.
 but, *sed, autem* (§ 43, 3. b), *tamen*; but if, *sin, quod si*; — buy, *emo.³* [for, *nisi* (with verb)].
 by (near), *ad*; (with passives) *ab, a* (abl.); means, ablative alone (see p. 28); by far, *longe*; be by (near), *adesse*.

C.

Cádiz, *Gades, ium* (F.).
 Cæsar, *Caesar, aris*; adj., *Caesarianus*.
 Caenina (of), *Caeninensis, e*.
 calamity, *calamitas, atis* (F.).
 call, *appello,¹ advoco;¹* — to mind, *commemorare;¹* — upon (for opinion), *sententiam rogare*; — together, *convoco*.
 camp, *castra, orum* (N.); of the camp, *militaris, e*.

campaign, *bellum, i*.
 can, *possum, posse, potui*.
 candidate, to become (for consul), *consulatum petere*.
 cap, *pileus, i* (M.).
 capitol, *capitolium, i*.
 captain, *dux, ducis*.
 captivated, *captus*.
 capture (v.), *capio.³*
 capture, *expugnatio, onis* (F.).
 care, *cura, ae*.
 careful of, *studiosus* (gen.).
 carry, *porto,¹ fero, deicio.³*
 Carthage, *Carthago, inis* (F.).
 Carthaginian, *Carthaginiensis*.
 cast, *proicio;²* — the parts of a play, *distribuo*.
 cast, *jactus* (part. of *jacio*).
 cat, *felis, is*.
 catch, *excipio;³* — at, *capto.¹*
 Catiline, *Catilina, ae*.
 Cato, *Cato, onis*.
 Caudine Forks, *Furculae Caudinae*.
 cause to suffer, *aliqua re adficere; efficere ut*.
 cause, *res, rei; causa, ae; res* (plur.).
 cavalier, *eques, itis*.
 cavalry, *eques, itis, pl*.
 celebrate, *celebro.¹*
 celestial, *caelestis, e*.
 censor, *censor, oris*; one who has been —, *ensorius* (p. 10).
 censure, *reprehendo.³*
 chain, *vinculum, i*.
 chair, *sella, ae* (F.). [tor.
 champion, *defensor, propugna-*
 chance, *occasio oblata; casus, us* (M.); by chance, *forte*.
 change, *muto.¹*

character, *indoles, mores* (pl.).
 charge, *accusatio, crimen*.
 Charles, *Carolus, i*.
 chariot, *currus, ūs* (M.).
 chase, *venatio, onis* (F.).
 chastise, *verbero*.¹
 check, *reprimō*.²
 cheer, *recreo*,¹ *hortor*.¹
 cherish hate, *odium gerere*.
 chief, *dux, cis*; *princeps, ipis*.
 chief-town, *caput gentis*.
 chiefly, *maxime*.
 child, *puer, i*; adj. *puerilis, e*.
 children, *liberi*; young —, *pueri, orum, infantes*.
 childless, *orbus*.
 chink, *rima, ae*.
 choose, *delego*,³ *gi*; (of officers) *facio*,³ *feci*; *creo*¹ (p. 122, *dd*).
 Cicero, *Cicero, onis*.
 circle, *circulus*; (v.) *circa esse*.
 circumstance, *res, rei*.
 citizen, *civis, is*.
 city, *urbs, urbis, civitas, atis* (F.); of the —, *urbanus*.
 civil, *civilis, e*.
 claim, *vindico*.¹
 class, *ordo, inis* (M.).
 claw, *unguis, is* (M.).
 cleft, *fissus* (part. of *findo*).
 clemency, *clementia, ae*.
 client, *cliens, tis*.
 climb, *scando*,³ *adscendo*.³
 close (v.), *claudio*,³ *si, sum*.
 close to, *prope* (acc.); *prope ab*.
 closed, *clausus*. — closely, *arte*.
 clothed, *vestitus*.
 coast, *litus, ōris* (N.).
 coil, *volvo*.³
 cold, *algor, oris* (M.).
 colleague, *collega, ae*.

college, *collegium, i*.
 colony, *colonia, ae*.
 come, *venio*,⁴ *veni*; — across, *transeo, ire*; — forward, *existō*; ³ — in (of wind), *adflare*; — to, *pervenio* ⁴ *ad, accedo* ³ *ad*.
 comeliness, *forma, ae*.
 command (v.), *jubeo*,³ *jussi*; (in office), *praeesse*; be master of, *impero*.¹
 command (n.), *imperatum, i*; supreme —, *imperium, i*; by —, *jussu*.
 commander, *imperator, oris*.
 commanding, *dux, ducis* (gen.); as descriptive adj., *augustus*.
 commend, *laudo*.¹ [*committo*.
 commit (an act), *facio, efficio*,³
 common (in common), *communis, e*.
 common people, *plebs, is* (F.).
 commonwealth, *res publica*.
 communicate, *impertio*.⁴
 community, *populus, i*.
 companion, *socius, i*.
 compare, *comparo*.¹
 company: in — with, *una cum*.
 complete, *ad finem perduco*.³
 completely, *plane*.
 compelled, *coactus (cogo)*.
 compose, *concipio, scribo*.³
 compulsion, under, *coactus*.
 comrade, *comes, itis*.
 conceal, *celo*¹ (two acc.), *occulto*.³
 concerns, it, *refert* (§ 40, 4. d).
 conclude (make), *facio*.
 condemn, *damno*,¹ *reprehendo*.³
 condition, *condicio fortunae*; *fortunae, arum*.
 conduct (v.), *duco*,³ *deduco*.

conduct (harsh), *asperitas*.
 confederation, *foedus, eris* (N.).
 confer on, *defero ad, confero in*.
 confidence, *fiducia, ae, fides*.
 confidence, to have — in, *confido*³ (dat. or abl.). [*obsecro*.
 conical, *coni* (gen.). — conjure, *conjurare*.
 connect, *conjungo*.³
 connected, *conjunctus*.
 conquer, *vinco*,³ *vici, victum*; *devinco*. — conquest, *victoria*.
 conqueror, *victor, oris*.
 consequences, *exitus, ūs* (sing.).
 consider, *existimo*,¹ *considero*.¹
 consideration, *res, rei* (F.).
 consistent, to be, *congruo*.³
 consolation, *solatio, consolatio, onis* (F.).
 conspicuous, to be, *emineo*.³
 conspiracy, *conjuratio, onis*.
 conspirator, *conjurator, i*.
 conspire, *conjuro*.¹
 consul, *consul, ūlis*; (one who has been), *consularis*.
 consulship, *consulatus, ūs* (M.); in one's consulship, *consul*, in appos. with name.
 consult, *consulo*,³ *ui* (§ 51, 2. a³).
 consume, *consumo*.³
 contempt (with), *fastidians, tis*.
 contend (as with difficulty), *laboro*¹ (abl.).
 content, contented, *contentus* (abl.); wilt thou be —, *satin habes*?
 continue, *persequor*,³ *secutus*; — in pursuit, *hostes consecrari*.
 contrary to, *contra* (acc.).
 control, *moderatio, onis* (F.).

controlled, *frenatus*.
 convict, *convinco*,³ *damno*.¹
 corner, *angulus, i*.
 counsellor, to have, *in consilium adhibere*.
 count (a title of rank), *comes, itis*.
 countless, *innumerabilis, e*.
 country, *regio, onis*; *terra, ae*; (one's native), *patria, ae*; — people, *agrestes, ium, rustici, orum*; in the —, *ruri*.
 court, *aula, ae*. — cover, *tego*.³
 covered, *tectus* (F.) *coopertus*; (here and there, as with dwellings), *sparsus*.
 cowardice, *ignavia, ae*.
 cowardly, *ignavus*.
 cradle, *arca, alveus*.
 crafty, *dolosus, callidus*.
 crawl, *serpo*.³
 create, *creo*; ¹ *facio*,³ *feci*; *constituo*.³
 credit (v.), *confido*.³
 credit (n.), *laus, dis* (F.).
 Creon, *Creon, ontis*.
 crime, *scelus, eris* (N.).
 crisis, *discrimen, inis* (N.).
 cross, *transire*.
 crowd, *comitatus, ūs, turba, ae*.
 crown, *corona, ae*; (royal power), *imperium, regnum*.
 cruel, *crudelis, e*.
 cry, *clamo*; ¹ — out, *clamo, exclamo, vociferor*.¹
 cultivated, *cultus*.
 curious, *memorabilis, e*.
 curule, *curulis, e*.
 custom, *mos, moris* (M.).
 cynic, *cynicus*.

D.

danger, *periculum, i.*
 dangerous, *gravis, e.*
 daughter, *filia, ae.*
 day, *dies, diei* (M.), (rarely F. in singular).
 dazzling, *clarus.*
 dead (slain), *occisus.*
 deadliest, *gravissimus.*
 dearly, *care, carissime.*
 death, *mors, tis*; condemn to —, *damnare capitis* (§ 50, 4. b), *morte multare*; put to —, *interficere.*
 debar, *prohibeo, 3 ui, itum.*
 debase, *depravo, 1.*
 debate, *sententias dicere.*
 debt (kindness), see note, p. 74.
 deceit, *fallacia, ae.*
 deceive, *decipio, 3.*
 decemvir, *decemvir, viri.*
 decide the contest, *decerto, 1.*
 decision, *judicium, i.*
 declare, *nuntio, 1 adfirmo, 1.*
 dedicate, *dedico, 1.*
 deed, *factum, i.*
 deem, *puto, 1.*
 deeply, *vehementer.*
 defeat (v.), *supero, 1.*
 defeat (n.), *calamitas, clades.*
 defend, *defendo*; defence, *salus.*
 degree (to what —), *quo.*
 delay, *mora, ae.*
 deliberate, *delibero, 1.*
 delight (v.), *delecto, 1.*
 delight (n.), *gaudium, i; delectatio, onis* (F.); *oblectamentum, i.*
 deliver, *libero, 1 trado, 3.*
 deliverer, *liberator, oris.*

demand, *postulo, 1 flagito, 1.*
 Demosthenes, *Demosthenes, is.*
 deny, *nego, 1.*
 depose (a king), *regno spolio, 1.*
 deprive, *orbo, 1 privo; 1* — of voice, *vocem eripere* (dat.).
 deputation, *legatio, onis* (F.).
 descended, *genitus* (with abl.).
 descend, *descendo, 3.*
 descent, *genus, eris* (N.).
 desert (n.), *deserta, orum.*
 deserted, *desertus.*
 desire, *cupio, 3 iui* (with acc. or infin.), *jubeo, 2.*
 desire (n.), *cupido, inis* (F.).
 despatch, *conficio, 3 interficio, 3.*
 despise, *contemno, 3 psi.*
 despoll, *spolio, 1.*
 despotism, *dominatio, onis* (F.).
 destiny, *fortuna, arum.*
 destroy, *deleo, 2 eui, etum.*
 destroyer, *perditor, oris.*
 destruction, *exitium, perniciēs.*
 detected, *detectus.*
 determine, *statuo; 3* — on, *capere* (p. 65).
 detestable, *nefandus.*
 devold, *expers, tis* (with gen.).
 devotions (of —), *precandi* (gen.).
 dexterously, *sollertiter.*
 diadem, *diadema, atis* (N.).
 dictator, *dictator, oris.*
 dictatorship, *dictatura, ae.*
 die, *moriō, 3 mortuus.*
 die out, *exstinguor, 3.*
 die (n.), *alea, ae.*
 dignity, *dignitas, honos.*
 difficult, *difficilis, e.*
 dinner, *cena, ae* (F.).
 dip, *tingo, 3 tinxi, tinctum.*

direct, *viam monstrare*.
 disappear, *evanesco*,² *ui*.
 disaster, *clades*, *is* (F.).
 discharge, *praesto*,¹ *fungor*.
 disciplined, *coercitus* (p. 85).
 discontinue, *abrogo*.¹
 discourse (v.), *disputo*.¹
 discovery (conduct to —), *efficere ut inveniret*.
 discredit, *infamia*, *ae* (F.).
 disease, *morbus*, *i* (M.).
 disgrace, *ignominia*, *dedecus*.
 display, *praebeo*.²
 dispirited, *fractus animo*.
 displease, *displiceo*, *ui* (dat.).
 disposer, *rector et moderator*.
 disposition, *voluntas*, *atis*.
 disregard, *neglego*, *xi*.
 dissatisfied, *non contentus*.
 dissembler, *simulator*, *oris*.
 dissolution, *solutio*, *onis* (F.).
 distinguish, *laudibus ornare*;
 with distinction, *honorifice*.
 distress, *res adversae*.
 distribute, *distribuo*.²
 distrust, *diffidentia*, *ae*.
 disunion, *dissensio*, *onis* (F.).
 divide, *divido*,² *si*, *sum*.
 divine, *civinus*.
 diviner, *haruspex*, *icis*.
 divinity, *natura divina*.
 do, *facio*,³ *feci*, *factum*.
 dog, *canis*, *is* (gen. pl. *canum*).
 dominion (subjects), *civitas*,
 atis (F.).
 doom: to seal —, *perniciēs at-
 que exitium esse*.
 door, *fores*, *ium* (F.); *porta*, *ae*
 (F.); out of doors, *foras*.
 doubtful, *dubius*.
 downward, *deorsum*.

drama, *fabula*, *ae*.
 draw up, *subduco*; ² troops —,
 copias instruo.²
 drink (n.), *potio*, *onis* (F.).
 drive, *pello*,² *pepuli*, *pulsum*.
 drowned: to be —, *aquā pe-
 rire*.
 dry, *siccus*.
 dry (up), *exsicco*.¹
 due, to be, *deberi*.
 duly, *rite*.
 duty, *munus*, *eris*; *officium*, *i*.
 dwell, *habito*.¹

E.

eagerness, earnestness, *studi-
 um*, *i*; eagerly, *avide*.
 eagle, *aquila*, *ae*.
 earlier, *prior*, *oris*.
 early, *mane*.
 early-ripe, *maturus*.
 earnest: in —, *serio*.
 earth, *terra*, *ae*; surface of —
 expressed by *omnis*.
 ease, *tranquillitas*, *atis* (F.).
 East, *oriens*, *tis* (M.); of the
 —, *Asiaticus*.
 easy, *facilis*, *e*.
 educate, *educo*,¹ *erudio*.⁴
 education, *disciplina*, *ae*.
 effectually, *penitus*.
 effeminacy, *mollities*, *ei* (F.).
 effort, to make, *nitor*.³
 Egypt, *Aegyptus*, *i* (F.).
 elder, *major* (*natu*).
 elect, *creo*; ¹ *facio*,² *feci*, *factus*.
 election (as consul), *consula-
 tus*, *ūs* (M.).
 elegy, *elegia*, *ae*.

elephant, *elephantus*, *i*.
 eloquence, *eloquentia*, *ae*.
 emblem, *signum*, *i*.
 eminent, *illustris*, *e*.
 empire, *imperium*, *i*.
 employ, *utor*,³ *usus*, *adhibeo*.
 empty, *inanis*, *e*.
 enable, *facere ut possim*.
 encounter (v.), *confligo* ³ *cum*.
 encourage, *cohortor*.¹
 end (v.), *finio*.⁴
 end, *finis*, (F. or M.); at an — ,
finitus; bring to an — , *conficio*,³ *feci*; — of, *extremus*.
 endanger, *in periculum adducere*.
 endless, *sine fine*.
 endowed, *praeditus*.
 endure, *fero* (*perfero*), *tuli*; capable of enduring, *patiens*, *tis*.
 enemy, *hostis*, *is* ("the enemy," usually plur.); a personal — ,
inimicus, *i*.
 energy, *studium*, *i*.
 engage, *adhibeo*,² *ui*, *itum*.
 engage in, *inire*.
 engaged, *occupatus*.
 English, *Angli*, *orum*.
 enjoy (fruit), *percipio*.³
 enlightened rule, *imperium sapienter administratum*.
 enmity, *odium*, *i*.
 Enna (man of), *Hennensis*, *is*.
 enrich, *locupletio*.¹
 ensign, *insigne*, *is* (N.).
 enter, *intro*; ¹ *ineo*, *ire*; — a ship, *conscendo*.³
 enterprise, *conatus*, *ūs* (M.).
 entire, *totus* (gen. *ius*).
 entitle, *inscribo*.³
 entreat, *obsecro*.¹

envenomed, *venenatus*.
 envy, *invideo*; *invidia* (noun).
 Epidaurian, *Epidaurius*.
 Epirota, *Epirotae*, *arum*.
 equal, *par*, *paris*.
 equally, *non minus*, *aeque*.
 establish, *conloco*.¹
 estate, *praedium*, *i*.
 esteem (v.), *aestimo*.¹
 Etruscan, *Etruscus*.
 even, *etiam*; not — , *ne . . quidem*; — as, *ut*.
 event, *factum*, *i*; *eventus*, *ūs* (M.).
 ever, *unquam*; (always), *semper*.
 every, everybody, *quisque*, *quilibet*, *omnis*, *unusquisque* (p. 19).
 everywhere, *ubique*, *ubivis*.
 evil, *malus*; (n.), *incommodum*, *i*.
 exactly, *plane*.
 exalted, *excelsus*.
 example, *exemplum*, *i*.
 except, *praeter* (acc.), *nisi*.
 excess, *nimum*. — excel, *excello*.
 excited, *concitatus*.
 exclaim, *clamo*.¹
 execrate, *exsecror*.¹
 exercise (v.), *exerceo*,² *ui*, *itum*.
 exercise (n.), *exercitatio*, *onis* (use plur.).
 exert, *exerceo*,² *ui*.
 exertion, *labor*, *oris* (M.).
 exhaust, *conficio*,³ *exhaurio*.⁴
 exigency, *necessitas*, *atis* (F.).
 exile, *exsilium*, *i*; to be in — ,
exsulo; ¹ an — , *exsul*, *ūlis*.
 expel, *expello*,³ *puli*, *pulsum*.
 expense, *pretium*, *i*.
 experience (v.), *obire* (acc.).
 exploit, *res gesta*.

expose, *obicio*,² *jeci*; *offero*.
exterminate, *exstirpo*.¹
extinguish, *restinguo*,² *nxi*.
extirpate, *exstirpo*.¹
extort, *extorqueo*,² *torsi*.
extraordinary, *extraordinarius*.
extremely, express by superl.
eye, *oculus*, *i* (M.).

F.

face, *vultus*, *us* (M.).
facilitate, *adjuvo*,¹ *juvi*.
failings, *vitia*, *orum*.
fair share, *justa pars*.
fair-speaking, *blandiloquus*.
faith: on the — of, *fretus* (with abl.).
faithful, *fidus*.
Falerian, *Falernius*.
fall, *cado*,² *pereo*; — to the lot of, *obtingo*, *tigi* (of office, use rather *obtinere*, of the man chosen); let —, *deicio*; — in with, *occurro*;² — upon, *invadere in*; — down, *decido*;² — on one's knees, *in genua procumbere*.
false, *falsus*.
faltering, *vacillans*, *tis*.
fame, *fama*, *ae*.
family, *familia*, *ae*.
famine, *fames*, *is* (F.).
famous, *clarus*.
fancy, *opinor*.¹ [late.
far, by far, *longe*; far and wide, *farewell*, *vale*.
fate, *fatum*, *i*; *Fortuna*, *ae*.
father, *pater*, *tris*; *parens*, *tis*; of the fathers, *patrius*.

fatigue, *labor*, *oris* (M.).
fault, *culpa*, *ae*.
favor (v.), *saveo*,² *favi*, *fautum*.
favor (n.), *beneficium*, *i*.
favorable, *secundus*; prove —, *bene succedere*.
fear (v.), *timeo*,² *metuo*,² *vereor*.²
fear (n.), *timor*, *oris*; *metus*, *us*.
feeble, *exiguus*.
feel, *sentio*,⁴ *sensi*; *adficior* (with abl.).
fellow, *vir*, *vir*.
ferment, *agitatio*, *tumultus*.
fervor, *studium*, *i*.
festival, *festus dies*.
few, *aliquot*, *pauci*, *ae*, *a*.
field, *ager*, *gri* (M.), *arvum*, *i*.
fierce, *acer*, *ferox*; fiercely disputed victory, *acerrimis pugnis parva victoria*.
fig, or
fig-tree, *ficus*, *i* (F.).
fight (v.), *pugno*; — a battle, *committere proelium*.
fight (n.), *pugna*, *ae*.
figure, *species*, *ei* (F.), *statura*.
fill, *compleo*, *impleo*.²
find, *invenio*,⁴ *video*.²
finish, *perago*.²
fire, *ignis*, *is* (M.).
firm, *firmus*.
first, *primus*; at —, *primo*; (beforehand), *ante*.
fitting, to be, *decere*.
fix, *figo*.²
flame, *flamma*, *ae* (F.), *ignis*, *is* (M.).
flee, *fugio*,² *fugi*; *confugio*.
fleet, *classis*, *is* (F.).
flight, *fuga*, *ae*.
flock, *pecus*, *oris* (N.).

flog, *fustibus caedere* or *virgis*.
 flow, *fluo*,³ *xi, xum*.
 foe, *hostis, is* (C.).
 fold, *sinus, ūs* (M.).
 follow, *sequor*,³ *insequor, imitor*.
 follower, *comes, itis*.
 food, *cibus, i* (M.). — foot, *pes*.
 foot, of hill, *imus collis*; — (infantry), *pedes, itis* (pl.).
 for (prep.), *pro* (abl.); often expressed by dative (§ 51, 7. R.), or by acc. of place.
 for, *nam, enim, etenim* (§ 43, 3. d); (instead of), *in loco*.
 forbid, *veto*,¹ *ui*.
 forces, *copiae, arum*.
 forest, *silva, ae*.
 forfend: heaven —, *di omen avertant*.
 forget, *obliviscor*,³ *oblitus* (§ 50, 4. a).
 forgetting, *oblitus* (gen.).
 forgive, *ignosco*,³ *novi*.
 fork, *furca, ae*.
 form (v.), *facio, capio*.³
 form (n.), *forma, ae*; (political) *institutum, i*.
 former (the), *ille, a, ud*.
 forsaken, *desertus*.
 forth: to go —, *egredi*.
 fortify, *munio*.⁴
 fortitude, *fortitudo, inis* (F.).
 fortress, *castellum, i* (N.).
 fortune, *fortuna*.
 forum, *forum, i*.
 forward: to come, *existere*.
 found, *condo*,³ *didi*; to — a colony at, *coloniam deducere* (with acc. of name of town).
 franchise, *civitas, atis* (F.), *jus, juris* (N.).

free, *liber, era, um*; — (as a gift), *gratuitus*; — town, *municipium*; freedom, *libertas*.
 friend, *amicus, i*; intimate —, *familiaris*.
 friendly, to be, *faveo*,² *favi*.
 friendship, *amicitia, ae*.
 fringe, *praetexo*,³ *ui*.
 from (out of), *ex*; (away from), *ab*; (by reason of), *propter* (see p. 33).
 frugal, *parcus*.
 frugally, *frugaliter*.
 fruit, *fructus, ūs*.
 full, *plenus*; — measure, *summus*.
 fully, *bene, plane*.
 function, *munus, eris* (N.).
 furious, *ferox, ocis*.
 further (adj.), *reliquus*.
 fury, *saevitia, ae, furor, oris* (M.).
 future, *futurus*.

G.

Gabinian law, *Gabinia lex*.
 gain (v.), *pario*,³ *peperi, par-tum*; *sibi conciliare*.
 gain (n.), *quaestus, ūs*.
 gain over, *concilio*.¹
 gallant, *fortissimus*.
 galley, *navis, is* (F.).
 games, *ludi, orum*.
 gap, *hiatus, ūs* (M.).
 garment, *vestis, is* (F.).
 gate, *janua, porta, ae* (F.).
 gather, *carpo*,³ *psi*.
 Gaul (the land), *Gallia, ae*; (the people), *Galli, orum*.
 gay, *laetus*.
 general (n.), *imperator, oris*.

generally, *fere* (see "men"),
vulgo.

genius (intellect), *ingenium*, *i*.
German, *Germanus*.

get, *adipiscor*; — away, *effugio*.
getting round, *circumfusi*.

gift, *donum*, *i*; *munus*, *eris*.

gifts, *bona*, *orum*.

gigantic, *ingens*, *tis*, *immanis*, *e*.

give, *do*,¹ *dedi*, *datum*; *tribuo*,²
adhibeo;² — back, *reddo*;² —
up, *depono*; — place, *cedo*,³
cessi; — to one's self, *sumo*.³

glory (v.), *glorior*.¹

glory (n.), *gloria*, *ae*, *laus*, *dis*
(F.), *decus*, *oris* (N.), *fama*, *ae*.

go, *eo*, *ire*, *ivi*, *itum*; *procedo*,³
iter facio;³ — on behind,
sequor;³ — out, *egredi*,³ *ex-*
cedo,³ *exire*; — up to, *adire*,
accedere; so goes, *ita se ha-*
bet.

goat, *caper*, *pri* (M.).

god, *deus*, *i* (§ 10, 4. f).

good, *bonus*; make —, *compen-*
sare; be — for, *convenire*
(dat.).

goodness, *virtus*, *utis* (F.).

governor, *praefectus*, *i*.

grandson, *nepos*, *otis*.

gratitude, occasion of, *gratum*,
res grata.

great, *magnus*, *immanis*.

greatly, *multum*; so —, *tantum*,
magnifice.

Grecian, Greek, *Graecus*.

greeting, *salutatio*, *onis* (F.).

grief, *luctus*, *us* (M.); *dolor*, *oris*,
(M.).

groan, *gemitus*, *us* (M.).

gross, *gravis*, *e*.

ground, *terra*; on the —, *kumi*.
group, *agmen*, *inis* (N.).

grow up, *adolesco*,² *evi*; — out,
provenio.⁴

guard (n.), *custos*, *odis*.

gust, *status*, *us* (M.).

H

habitation, *domicilium*, *i*.

hall, *appello*.¹

hall, *aula*, *ae*.

halt, *consisto*.²

hand, *manus*, *us* (F.); holding
in —, *ipse manu tenens*;
(power), *potestas*, *atis* (F.)

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, *dis*.

happen, *accido*,³ *evenio*.

happiness, *felicitas*, *atis* (F.).

happy, *felix*, *icis*.

harbinger, *praenuntia*, *ae*.

harbor, *portus*, *us* (M.).

hardship, *labor*, *oris* (M.).

hardy, *durus*.

harsh treatment, *crudelitas*,
atis (F.).

Hasdrubal, *Hasdrubal*, *dis*.

hasten, *propero*.¹

hastily, *temere*.

hateful, *odiosus*.

hatred, *odium*, *i*.

haughty, *arrogans*, *tis*.

have, *habeo*,² *ui*, *itum*; (take to
one's self), *adhibeo*² (see p. 84).

head (n.), *caput*, *itis* (N.).

head-quarters, *castra*; appoint-
ed to —, *praefectus*, with gen.

health (state of), *valetudo*, *inis*
(F.).

hear, *audio*.⁴

heart, *animus*, *i*.
 heat, *calor*, *oris* (M.).
 heaven, *caelum*, *i*.
 heifer, *juvenca*, *ae*.
 heir, *heres*, *edis*.
 help, *auxilium*, *i*.
 herald, *fetialis*, *is*.
 herdsman, *pastor*, *oris*.
 here, *hic*; — and there, *passim*.
 hereditary, *paternus*.
 heritage, *hereditas*, *atis* (F.).
 Hesiod, *Hesiodus*, *i*.
 high, *altus*, *excelsus*.
 highest, *summus*, *maximus*.
 hill, *mons*, *collis* (M.).
 hinder, *impedio*.⁴
 hindrance, *impedimentum*, *i* (N.).
 his (of his), *ejus*; reflexive, *suus*.
 history, *historia*, *ae*.
 hold, *teneo*; ² — out, *propono*.
 holiday, *dies festus*.
 home, *domus*, *ūs*; *domicilium*, *i*; at —, *domi*.
 Homer, *Homerus*, *i*.
 honest men, *boni*, *orum*.
 honesty, *probitas*, *atis* (F.).
 honey, *mel*, *mellis* (N.).
 honor (v.), *colo*,³ *ui*, *cultum*.
 honor (n.), *decus*, *ōris* (N.); *honor*, *oris* (M.); *dignitas*, *atis* (F.); with —, *honeste*.
 honorable, *honorificus*.
 hope (n.), *spes*, *spei* (F.); *votum*, *i*.
 hopeless, *inutilis*, *e*.
 Horace, *Horatius*, *i*.
 Horatian, *Horatius*.
 horn, *cornu*, *us* (N.).
 horse, *equus*, *i*; war-horse, *equus militaris*.

hostile (of the enemy), *hostilis*, *e*; (actively hostile), *infensus*.
 hostilities, *bellum*.
 hour, *hora*, *ae*; in an —, *momento temporis*.
 house, *domus*, *ūs* (F.).
 how, *quam*; — much, *quantum*, *quanto*; interrog., *quomodo*.
 however, *tamen*, *vero*, *quamvis*; — large, *quantum vis*.
 human, *humanus*.
 humble, *humilis*, *demissus*.
 humbled, *fractus*.
 humiliation, *molestia*, *ae*.
 humililty, with, *demissis verbis*.
 hunger, *fames*, *is* (F.).
 hunter, *venator*, *oris*.
 hurry (v.), *propero*.¹
 hurtful, to be, *noceo*,² *ui*.
 husband, *maritus*, *i*.

I

I, *ego*; I for my part, *ego vero* (or *equidem*).
 ideas, *idūs*, *uum* (§ 84).
 idleness, *socordia*, *ae*. — if, *si*.
 ignorance, *inscitia*, *ae*.
 ignorant, *ignarus*.
 ill, *male*.
 illustrious, *clarus*, *praeclarus*.
 Illyrians, *Illyrii*, *orum*.
 image, *imago*, *inis* (F.).
 imitate, *imitor*.¹
 imitation, *imitatio*, *onis* (F.).
 immediately, *statim*, *illico*.
 immortal, *sempiternus*, *immor-*
 immovable, *imobilis*. [*tal*is].
 impart, *communico*.¹ *cum*.
 impatient, *impatiens*, *tis*.

impend, *impendeo*.³
 implore, *oro*.¹
 important, *potens, tis*.
 impression, see memory.
 improper, *minus aptus*.
 in, *in, de* (abl.).
 increase (v. a.), *adaugeo*,² *xi, ctum* (in neut. sense, use passive).
 increasing, *major, us*.
 indeed, *quidem*.
 independence, *libertas, atis* (F.).
 indifference to, *contemptio, onis* (F.) (with gen.).
 indignation, *ira, ae, indignatio, onis* (F.).
 indolence, *ignavia, ae*.
 induce, *induco*.³
 infamous, *turpis, e, nefandus*.
 infamy, *ignominia, ae*.
 inferior, *inferior, us*.
 infinite, *summus*.
 inflict death on, *morte multare*.
 influence, to have, *gratiā valeo*.²
 influenced, *adfectus*.
 inform, *certiorem facio*.
 inhabit, *habito*.¹
 inherit, *accipio*.³
 inheritance, *hereditas, atis* (F.).
 injury, *injuria, ae*; do no —, *nihil nocere* (dat.).
 insolently, *insolenter*.
 inspiration, *spiritus, afflatus*.
 inspire, *animum dare*; may the gods —, *di dunt*.
 instance, for, *quidem*.
 instantly, *statim*.
 instead of, *pro* (abl.); *in loco* (with gen.).
 instil, *instillo* ¹ (acc. and dat.).
 institute, *constituo*,² *instituo*.³

instructed, *certior factus*.
 insult (n.), *contumelia, ae*.
 insurgents, use *seditio*.
 intelligence, *intelligentia, ae*.
 intend, *in animo esse* (*habere*).
 intention, *consilium, i*.
 intercede, *deprecor*.¹
 interest, to be one's —, *inter esse* (gen. § 50, 4. d).
 interests, *utilitates et commoda*.
 interregnum, *interregnum, i*.
 interrupt, *interrumpo*,² *rupi*.
 interval, *tempus, oris* (N.).
 intimate (adj. or noun), *familiaris, is*.
 into, *in* (acc.).
 intolerable, *intolerabilis, e*.
 introduce, *induco*,² *duxi*.
 invade, *invado*,² *si, sum*.
 invaders, *hostes inrumpentes*.
 invasion, *inruptio, onis* (F.).
 invent, *invenio*.⁴
 invention, *inventia, orum* (N.).
 inventor, *inventor, toris* (M.).
 inventress, *inventrix, tricis* (F.).
 inviolable, *inviolatus*.
 invite, *invito*,¹ *oro*.¹
 irritated, *moleste ferens*.
 island, *insula, ae*.
 Italian, *Italicus*.
 Italy, *Italia, ae*.
 ivory, *ebur, ōris* (N.); of ivory, *eburneus*.

J.

jealous, *invidus* (gen.).
 jealousy, *invidia, ae*.
 jest, *jocus, i*; pl. *joca*.

join in, *accedere ad, jungere se*
(dat.); in a military sense,
militare cum aliquo.

joined to, *conjunctus cum.*

joy, *gaudium, i.* [tri.

judge (n.), *judex, icis, arbiter,*

judicial power, *judicium, i.*

Jugurtha, *Jugurtha, ae;* (adj.),
Jugurthinus.

Julian (adj.), *Fulius, a, um.*

Jupiter, *Juppiter, Fovis.*

just, *justus.*

just now, *nunc maxime.*

justice, *aequitas, tatis; justitia,*
ae.

K

keep, *servo;*¹ — silence, *taceo.*²

kill, *interficio;*³ *occido.*³

kind, *comis, e, benevolus.*

kindle, *incendo.*³

kindly, *comiter, blande.*

kindness, *beneficium, i;* as a
quality, *comitas, facilitas, atis*
(F.), *benevolentia, ae.*

king, *rex, regis;* (adj.), *regius.*

kingdom, *regnum, i.*

knee, *genu, us* (N.).

knife, *cultellus, i.*

knight, *eques, itis.*

know, *scio,*⁴ *nosco,*³ *novi;* intel-
*lego;*⁵ (be aware), *sentio.*⁴

knowledge, *scientia, ae.*

L

labor, *labor, oris* (M.).

lake, *lacus, us* (M.).

lament, *moleste ferre.*

lamp, *lucerna, ae.*

land, *terra, ae.*

language, *oratio, onis;* *verba.*

large, *magnus.*

lasting, *dinturnus.*

last, *duro.*¹

last (adj.), *ultimus;* at —, *tan-*
dem, extremum.

lastly, *denique.*

latest, *supremus.*

lastly, *denique.*

Latium (of), *Latinus, a, um.*

latter (the), *hic, haec, hoc* (see
p. 13).

law, *lex, legis* (F.).

lay, *impono;*² — hand on, *tango.*

lay hold, *teneo,*² *tango.*²

lay down, *deponere.*

lead (v.), *duco,*³ *adduco,*³ *duxi,*
ductum; — away, *abduco.*³

leader, *dux, ducis.*

leap into, *insilio,*⁴ *ui;* — over,
*transilio,*⁴ *ui.*

learn, *disco,*² *didici.*

learned, *doctus.* — at least, *saltem.*

leathern, *ex pellibus factus.*

leave, *relinquo,*³ *liqui;* (go from),
egredi; (proceed), *proficisci.*

left (hand), *sinistra, ae.*

legion, *legio, onis* (F.).

length, at, *tandem, nunc demum.*

less, *inferior, us;* *minus.*

let fall, *demittere.*

let loose, *libero.*¹

lethargy, *stupor, oris* (M.).

letter, *epistola (ula), ae.*

levy, *conscribo.*³

liar, *mendax, acis.*

libation, *libamentum, i.*

liberate, *libero.*¹

liberator, *liberator, toris.*

liberty, *libertas, tatis* (F.).
 liberties, *jura* (N.).
 Libyan, *Libycus*.
 lie, *jaceo*,² *ui*; — upon, *esse* (gen.).
 life, *vita, ae*; in the life-time of,
 lift, *tollo*,² *sustuli*. [*vivus* (abl.).
 light (adj.), *levis, e*.
 lighted (illuminated), *inlustratus*;
 (kindled), *accensus*.
 like (adj.), *similis, e* (gen. or
 dat.); (adv.), *velut, ut*.
 lineage, *genus, eris*.
 linger, *moror*.¹
 lion, *leo, onis* (M.).
 listen (to), *audio*.⁴
 literature, *litterae, arum*.
 little, *paulum*; how — (adv.),
quam non; distance, *paulum*.
 live (v.), *vivo*,² *vixi*; *habito*.¹
 long, *longus, diuturnus*; —
 since, *jamdudum*; as — as,
quamdiu; no longer, *non jam*.
 look out, *prospicio*; like, *videor*.
 loose (let), *libero*,¹ *emitto*.²
 loquacious, *loquax, acis*.
 lord, *dominus, i*; to be —,
potior ⁴ (gen. § 54, 6. d).
 lose, *amitto*.²
 loss, *detrimentum, i*.
 loudly, *vehementer*.
 love (n.), *amor, oris* (M.); *cari-*
tas, atis (F.); lover, *amans*.
 lower, *inferior, us*.
 lust, *cupido, inis* (F.).
 luxuriously, *luxuriose*.

M

Macedonian, *Macedonicus*; a
 Macedonian, *Macedo, onis*.

mad scheme or conduct, *furor*.
 magnitude, *magnitudo*.
 magistrate, *magistratus, us*.
 maintain, *defendo*.²
 make, *facio*,² *conficio*; *reddo*,²
 — good, *compenso*,¹ — way,
cedo; ² — for (seek), *peto*.²
 man, *homo, inis, vir, i* (M.);
 men generally, *magna pars*
hominum; a man who, *is qui*.
 manner, *mos, moris* (M.).
 many, *multi, plurimi*; so —,
tot; very —, *plerique*.
 March, (of), *Martius*.
 march (v.), *proficiscor*,² *profec-*
tus; *progredior*,² *gressus*; *iter*
facere.
 march (n.), *iter, itineris* (N.).
 mariner, *nauta*. — margin, *ora*.
 market-place, *forum, i*.
 marriage, *matrimonium, i*; —
 with, *conubium*; to give in —,
nuptum dare.
 marry (of the man), *duco*,² *duxi*
 (sc. *in matrimonium*, or *uxo-*
rem in appos.); of the woman,
nubo,² *nupsi* (with dat.).
 Mars, *Mars, Martis*.
 Marsian, *Marsus*.
 martial, *bellicus*.
 marvellous, *mirus*.
 mask, *persona, ae*.
 mass (of troops), *caterva, ae*.
 massacre (v.), *trucido*.¹
 massacre (n.), *caedes, is*; *truci-*
datio civium.
 master, *dominus, i*.
 matron, *matrona, ae*.
 may, *licet* (impers.), *possum*.
 mean-time, *interea*; means, *opes*
 measure, *consilium, i* (N.).

mediation, *deprecatio, onis* (F.).
 meet, *occurro*,³ *nanciscor*,³ *nactus, invenio*.⁴
 memorable, *memorabilis, e*.
 memory, *memoria, ae*; our memories excited by our impressions, *animis memoria plenis recenti earum rerum quas sensibus percepimus*.
 men (soldiers), *milites, um*.
 menial, *servus, i*.
 mercy, *clementia, ae*.
 merit, *virtus, utis* (F.).
 message, *mandatum, i*.
 midst of, *medius*.
 mighty, *magnus ille*.
 might, *possim* (subj.).
 Milan, *Mediolanum, i*.
 military, *bellicus, militaris, e*.
 mind, *mens, tis; animus, i*.
 mine, *cuniculi, orum*.
 mingle, *misceror*.²
 misery, *miseria, ae*.
 misuse, *pravus usus*.
 Mithridatic, *Mithridaticus*.
 model, *exemplum, i*.
 moderate, *modicus*.
 modern, *hodiernus*.
 monarchy, *imperium, i*.
 money, *pecunia, ae*.
 monstrous, *immanis, e*.
 monument, *monumentum*.
 morass, *palus, udis* (F).
 more, *plus, amplius, magis*.
 morning, in the —, *mane* (N.); (adj.), *matutinus*.
 morrow, *posterus dies*.
 mortal, *mortalis, e*.
 most (men), *plerique*; (adv.), *maxime*.
 mother, *mater*. — motive, *causa*.

mountain, *mons, tis* (M.); (adj.), *montanus*.
 mountaineer, *montanus*.
 mourning, *luctus, ūs* (M.).
 mouth, *os, oris* (N.); of river, *ostium, i*.
 move, *moveo*,² *movi*.
 moved, *permotus*.
 movement, *motus, ūs* (M.).
 moving, *incedens, tis*.
 much, *multum, multo, magni*.
 multiply, *multiplico*.¹
 multitude, *multitudo, inis* (F.).
 Mulvian, *Mulvius*.
 municipal law, *jus civile*.
 murder (v.), *occido*,³ *trucido*.¹
 murder (n.), *caedes, is*.
 mutter, *summissa voce dicere*.
 my, *meus, a, um* (voc. M. *mi*).
 myself, *ego (ipse)*.
 mysterious, *secretus*.

N.

name (appoint), *creo*.¹
 name, *nomen*; in the —, *verbis*.
 narrow, *tenuis, e*; *angustus, a, um*; narrow pass, *angustiae*.
 nation, *gens, tis*; *natio, onis*.
 nature, *natura, ae*.
 naval, *navalis, e*.
 near, *vicinus*; (prep.), *prope*; (adv.), *juxta, haud procul*; nearest relatives, *proximi*.
 nearly, *paene*. [I. d].
 necessary, *opus* (in pred. § 54,
 need, *requiro*,³ to have —, *opus esse* (dat. and abl.); to be in —, *egere*.

neglect, *neglego*.³
 negligence (act of), *delictum*, *i*.
 neighbor, *vicinus*, *finitimus*, *a*,
um.
 neighborhood, *vicinia*, *ae*, *vi-*
cinum, *i*.
 negligence, *negligentia*, *ae*.
 nest, *nidus*, *i* (M.).
 never, *nunquam*.
 nevertheless, *nihilo minus*.
 new, *novus*.
 next (of two), *posterus*; of
 several, *proximus*. [noctu.
 night, *nox*, *noctis* (F.); at —,
 no (adj.), *nullus*; (adv.), *nihil*.
 nobility, *nobilitas*, *atis* (F.).
 noble, *nobilis*, *e* (to emphasize
 quality, use superlative); no-
 bles (as a party), *nobilitas*.
 noblest, *summus*.
 not, *non*; as question, *nonne*;
 — to, *ne*; if —, *si minus*.
 nothing, *nihil*, *nec quicquam*.
 now, *nunc*; (already), *jam*; (of
 past time), *tum*; (emph.), *hic*
nunc; (at this age), *hoc aetatis*.
 number, *numerus*, *i*; great
 numbers, *multitudo*.
 numerous, *magnus*.
 Numidian, *Numida*, *ae*.

O.

oath, *jusjurandum* (§ 14, 2. d').
 obedience, *obedientia*; uncon-
 ditional —, *obed. omnium re-*
rum.
 obey, *pareo*,³ *ui*, *itum*.
 object, *causa*, *ae*; (definite) *con-*
silium, *i*.

obliged, *coactus* (part. of *cogo*).
 observe, *animadverto*.³
 obstacle, *difficultas*.
 obtain, *adsequor*, *consequor*,³
secutus; *adipiscor*,³ *adeptus*.
 occasion, *occasio*, *tempus*.
 occur, *fi*, *feri*, *factus*.
 ocean, *oceanus*, *i* (M.).
 odious, *invisus*.
 of, usually expressed by gen. or
 possessive (see p. 35).
 offensive, *odiosus*.
 offer (v.), *offerre*, *polliceri*, *prae-*
stare, *imponere*.
 offer (n.), *condicio*, *onis* (F.).
 office, *magistratus*, *us*; *dignitas*
 officer, *praefectus*, *i*.
 often, *saepe*.
 oil, *oleum*, *i*.
 old, *vetus*, *eris*; (of age), *natus*
 old age, *senectus*, *tutis* (F.).
 old man, *senex*, *senis*.
 older, *major*.
 omen, *omen*, *inis* (N.).
 on, *in* (abl.); —, *de*. [sus.
 once, *quondam*; — more, *ru-*
 one, *unus* (gen. *ius*); the —
 . . . the other, *alter* . . .
alter. — at once, *statim*.
 only (adj.), *solus* (gen. *ius*),
unicus; (adv.), *modo*, *solum*,
tantum.
 onset, *impetus*, *us* (M.).
 open (v.), *recludo*,³ *si*, *sum*.
 opinion, *sententia*, *ae*.
 opportunity (favorable), *occasio*,
onis.
 oppose, *resisto*,³ *stiti*.
 opposed, *contrarius*; — in war,
adversus aliquem pugnare.
 opposite, *contra*, *alter*, *a*, *um*.

opposition (p. 44), *vis*.
oppression in one's province,
repetundae.
oppressive, *gravis, e*.
or, *aut, vel*; (as altern.) *an, - ne*
 (§ 71, 2).
oracle, *oraculum, i*.
oration, *oratio, onis* (F.).
orator, *orator, oris*; (adj.), *ora-*
torius.
order (v.), *jubeo, jussi*.
order, *mandatum, i*; by — of,
jussu; (rank), *ordo, inis*.
other, *alius, a, ud*; (of two),
alter; the —, *ceteri, reliqui*;
 some —, *aliquis*.
ought, *debeo, oportet* (impers.
 with acc.).
our, *noster, tra, trum*.
out, *ex* (in compos.).
outlive (to have), *superstes esse*.
outside (prep.), *extra*.
over, *supra, trans* (acc.).
overcome, *superio*.¹
overflowed, *superfusus*.
overhear, *excipio*.²
overflow, *overrun, se effundere*
per (acc.).
overturned, *eversus*.
overwhelmed, *confectus*.
owe, *debeo, ui*.
own (often omitted), gen. of *ipse*
 in appos. with possessive;
proprius.

P.

painstaking, *diligentia, ae*.
Palatine, *Palatinus, i*.
palm-tree, *palma, ae*.

Pamphylia, *Pamphylia, ae*;
 (adj.), *Pamphylensis*.
pang, *dolor, oris* (M.).
pardon (v.), *ignosco, novi* (dat.).
pardon (n.), *venia, ae*.
parent, *parens, tis*.
part, *pars, tis* (F.), (meaning duty,
 &c., use plur.); for the most
 —, *magna ex parte*.
partisan, *fautor, oris*.
partly, *aliqua (magna) ex parte*.
party, *pars, tis* (F.) (generally
 plur.); *factio, onis*.
pass a law, *legem ferre*; —
 over, *superio*,¹ *praetergredi*,
praeterferri; (time), *ago*.³
passion (for), *cupiditas, atis*
 (F.) (gen.); passions, *pertur-*
bationes animi.
patience, *patientia, ae*.
patrician, *patricius*.
patron, *patronus, i*.
pay, *solvo*.³
peace, *pax, pacis*; in —, *con-*
cors, dis.
peaceful, *quietus*.
peculiar, *proprius*.
Penates, *Penates, ium* (M.).
penetrate, *penetro*.¹
peninsula, *peninsula, ae*.
people, *populus, i* (M.), *plebs, is*
 (F.), *homines*.
perfection, in, *perfecte*.
perform, *ago*,³ *fungor*.³
peril, *periculum, i*.
perish, *pereo, ire, ii*.
perpetual, *sempiternus*.
Perses, *Perses, is*.
persuade, *persuadeo* ² (dat.);
 friendly persuasion, *amica*
verba.

Pharsalus, Pharsalus, i; (adj.), *Pharsalicus*.
Philip, Philippus, i.
Philometor, Philometor, oris,
 acc. *ora*.
philosopher, philosophus, i.
Physcon, Physcon, onis.
pilgrim, peregrinator, oris.
pillar, columna, ae.
pipe, tibia, ae.
pirate, praedo, onis.
pity (v.), have — on, misereor²
 (gen. person).
place (v.), impono,³ *depono*; ³ —
 at the head, *praepono*³ (dat.).
place (n.), locus, i; pl. *loci,*
orum.
play (on instrument), cano;³ —
 a part, *partes agere*.
player, histrio, onis.
pleasant, commodus.
please, placeo,³ *ui, itum;* (wish),
volo.
pleasure, voluptas, atis (F.).
pleasure-grounds, horti deli-
cati.
plebeian, plebeius.
pledge, polliceor.³
plot, conjuratio, onis (F.).
plunder, praeda, ae.
plunge, inicio,³ *jeci*.
poet, poeta, ae (M.).
poetry, versūs, um (plur. M.).
point out, indico.¹
poison, venenum, i.
polished, excultus.
pollution, violare (ger. p. 69).
Pompey, Pompeius, i; (adj.),
-anus.
poor, miser, era, um; *pauper,*
eris.

populace, vulgus, i (N.).
population, multitudo homi-
num.
position, locus, i (pl. loca).
possession, possessio, onis, ager,
gri. — posterity, posterī (pl.).
posted, collocatus.
pour (neut.), se fundere.
poverty, egestas, atis (F.)
power, potestas, atis (F.); (do-
minion), imperium, i (N.);
potentia, ae (F.).
powerful, potens, tis.
praise (v.), laudo.¹
praise (n.), laus, dis (F.).
pray, precor.¹
prayer, carmen precatōnis.
precede, anteeo, ire.
prediction, vaticinatio, onis (F.).
preparations, to make military
—, copias parare.
prepare (a way), munio.⁴
prepared, paratus.
present (n.), munus, eris (N.).
present (adj.), praesens, tis.
preserve, conservo.¹
preserver, conservator, oris.
prevail, vinco.³
prevent, impedio.⁴
priest, sacerdos, otis, pontifex,
icis.
principal, maximus.
prison, carcer, eris (M.).
prisoner, captivus, i.
private (citizen), privatus, i.
privation, inopia omnium re-
rum.
prize, praemium, i.
proceed, progredior.³
produce, efficio.³
professed, apertus.

professions (verbal), *verba, promissa*.
profit (v.), *fructum capere*.
profligacy, *flagitia, orum*.
promise (v.), *promitto*,² *polliceor*,² *itus*; *edico*.³
promise (n.), *promissum, i*.
promontory, *promuntorium, i*.
proof, *testimonium, i*.
property, *bona, orum*.
propose, *fero, ferre* (of a law).
proscribe, *proscribo*.³ [(F.).
proscription, *proscriptio, onis*
prosecute, *persequor*.³
prospect (in), *ante oculos*.
prostrate, *prostratus*.
proud, *superbus*.
proudly, *superbe*.
prove (try), *experior*.⁴
province, *provincia, ae*.
provision, to make, *provideo*.²
provisions, *commeatūs, uum*.
public, *publicus*.
Punic, *Punicus*.
purchase, *emo*,³ *emi, emptum*.
pure, *purus*.
purple, *purpureus*. [—, *qua re*.
purpose, *consilium, i*; for what
pursue, *persequor*;³ *celeriter ad*
consectandum, in hot pursuit.
push (against), *trudo*.³
put, *pono*,³ *posui, positum*; —
 an end to, *finio*;⁴ — to death,
interficio;³ — off (shore), *sol-*
vere navem.

Q.

quaestor, *quaestor, oris*.
quality (good), *virtus, utis* (F.).

quarter (district), *vicus, i* (M.).
quickly, *celeriter*.
quiet, *quies, etis* (F.).
quiet, *quietus, placidus*; remain
 —, *quiesco*,³ *eui*.
quietly, *quiete*.
quit, *relinquo*,³ *reliqui*.
quite, *admodum*.
quo, *inquit* (after the first
 word or words of the quota-
 tion).

R.

rage, *ira*.
raging, *iratus, furens, tis*.
rage, *squalor, oris* (M.).
raise, *tollo*,³ *sustuli, sublatum*.
rank, *ordo, inis* (M.).
rascal, *improbis, i*.
rather, *potius*.
reach, *manūs, uum* (F.).
read (aloud), *recito*.¹
reader, *lector, oris*.
ready, *paratus ad*.
real, *verus*.
reap (fruit), *capere, percipere*.
reason, *ratio, onis* (F.), *res, rei*
 (F.).
reawaken, *denuo concito*.¹
recall, *revoco*.¹
receive, *accipio*³ (*excipio*), *cepi,*
ceptum.
recognize, *agnosco*,³ *novi*; (hold
 valid), *ratum (justum) habere*.
recollection, *recordatio*.
recommend, *commendo*.¹
recommendation, *commenda-*
tio, onis (F.).
recompense, to make, *compen-*
sare.
recount, *memoro, commemoro*.¹

recourse, to have, *se conferre ad.*

recover, *recupero.*¹

recovering, *experrectus* (p. 65).

redeem, *compenso.*¹

reed, *arundo, inis* (F.)

reedy, *arundinibus praetextus.*

refinement, *humanitas, atis* (F.).

refuge, *perfugium, i*; take —, *confugio.*³

refusal, *recusatio, onis.*

refuse, *recuso.*¹

regain, *recipio.*³

regard (think), *existimo*; ¹ — for, *studium* (gen.); pay —, *rationem habere, respicere*; regret, *dolor, oris.* [garding, *de.*

reign (v.), *regno.*¹

reign (n.), *regnum, i.*

reject, *recuso,*¹ *eicio,*³ *jeci.*

relation, to bear, *attineo.*³

relative, *propinquus.*

relief, *opis* (gen.), *em* (F.).

rely on, *confido*³ (dat. or abl.).

relying, *fretus* (abl.).

remain, *maneo,*³ *mansi.*

remainder of, remaining, *reliquus.*

remark, *animadverto.*³

remarkable, *insignis, e.*

remember, *recordor*¹ (§ 50, 4. a, R.).

remembrance, *recordatio, onis.*

remind, *moneo,*² *ui, itum.*

remnant, *reliquiae, arum.*

remote, *ultimus.*

remove, *averto,*³ *amoveo.*³

renounce (allegiance to), *imperium abicere.*

renovate, *renovo.*¹

renown, *laus, dis* (F.).

repay (a kindness), *referre.*

repent, *paenitet.*

repeat, *iterum* with verb.

reply, *respondeo,*³ *di, sum.*

reply, *responsum, i.*

report, *nuntio,*¹ *dico.*³

represented, *expressus.*

representative, *exemplum, i.*

reprisals, to make, *compensare.*

republic, *respublica* (§ 14, 2. d.).

reputation, *fama, ae.*

require, *postulo.*¹

rescue, *servo,*¹ *eripio.*

resentment, *simultas, atis* (F.), *iracundia, ae.*

reserve, *reservo;*¹ — to one's own use, *sibi adservare.*

residence, *domicilium, i.*

resign (office), *abdico;*¹ (power), *depono.*³

resist, *resisto,*³ *stiti.* [ger.).

resistance, *contendere* (inf. or resolution, *consilium, i.*

resolve, *constituo.*³

rest-of, *reliquus.*

restless, *inquietus.*

restore, *renovo,*¹ *restituo,*³ *reddo.*³

retire, *abeo, ire* (abl.).

return, *revertor,*³ *regredior,*³ *redeo, respondeo*; on his —, *rediens, tis*; — thanks, *agere*

return (n.), *reditus, ūs.* [gratias.

revenge, *ultio, onis* (F.).

revive (neuter), *renascor;*³ (trans.), *restituo.*³

revolution, *civilis motus* (M.).

reward, *praemium, i*; to give as —, *donare.*

rich, *dives, itis, opimus.*

riches, *divitiae, arum.*

right, *rectus*, *a*, *um*; rights,
jura, *um* (N.); to think —,
recte sentire.

right hand, *dextra*, *ae*.

ring (signet-ring), *anulus*, *i*.

rise, *orior*³ (infin. *oriri*), *coörrior*,
ortus; *surgo*,⁸ *surrexi*.

rival, *aemulus*, *i*.

river, *flumen*, *inis* (N.).

road, *iter*, *itineris* (N.).

rob, *spolio*.¹

robe, *toga*, *ae*, *vestis*, *is* (F.).

roll (for writing), *tabellae*, *arum*.

Roman, *Romanus*.

Rome, *Roma*, *ae*; (as people),
Romani; (as state), *civitas*
Romana (*respublica*).

room, *cubiculum*, *i*. [*radicitus*.

root, *radix*, *icis*; — and branch,

rose, *rosa*, *ae*; full of roses,
roseus. — round, *circum*.

roving, *vagus*.

royal, of royalty, *regius*.

ruin, *exitium*, *i*.

rule over, *impero*.¹

ruler, *princeps*, *ipis*.

rumor, *rumor*, *fama*.

run, *curro*,⁸ *cucurri*.

rush, *procurro*; ⁸ — upon,
inruo.³

S.

Sabine, *Sabinus*.

sacred, *sacer*, *cra*, *um*.

sacrifice, *mactō*.¹

safe, *tutus*.

safety, *salus*, *utis* (F.).

sail (v.), *navigo*.¹

sail (n.), *velum*; sailor, *nauta*.

sake: for the — of, *causā*, fol-
lowing a gen.

sallies of wit, *facetiae*, *arum*.

same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

sanctuary, *aedes*, *is*.

satellite, *satelles*, *itis*.

satisfied, *contentus*.

savage, *barbarus*.

save, *servo*.¹

say, *dico*,³ *aio*, *inquam* (Gr. p.
81); absol. *loquor*.

scarcely, *vix*.—scanty, *exiguus*.

schooled, *adsuefactus*.

scorn, *ludibrium*.

sea, *mare*, *is* (N.); (adj.), *marinus*.
sea-shore, *ora*, *ae*.

season, *tempus*, *oris* (N.).

seat, *sedes*, *is* (F.).

seated, *sedens*, *tis*.

secession, *secessio*, *onis* (F.).

second, *secundus*, *alter*.

second time, *iterum*.

secret, *res occulta*; — society,
sodalitas, *atis* (F.).

secretary, *scriba*, *ae* (M.).

secure (v.), *occupo*.¹

secure: to be —, *non dubiam*
spem habere; to make —, *tu-*
tiores reddere.

security, *securitas*, *atis* (F.).

sedition, *seditio*, *onis* (F.).

see, *video*,⁸ *vidi*, *visum*.

seek, *peto*,⁸ *cupio*,⁸ *adpeto*.⁸

seem, *videor*,⁸ *visus*.

self-same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

seize, *prehendo*,⁸ *di*, *sum*;
eripio.³

sell, *vendo*,³ *didi*.

senate, *senatus*, *ūs* (M.); —
house, *curia*, *ae*.

senator, *senator*, *oris*; adj. -*ius*.

send, *mitto*,³ *misi*, *missum*.
 sense, *sensus*, *ūs* (M.).
 sensible, *prudens*, *tis*.
 sentence, to pass, *judicium ferre*.
 separate, *separo*.¹
 separate (his own), *proprius*.
 sepulchre, *sepulcrum*, *i*.
 serious, *gravis*, *e*.
 seriously, *in serium*.
 Seriphus, *Seriphus*, *i* (F.); (adj.), *Seriphius*.
 servant, *servus*, *i*.
 serve, *servio*; ⁴ — well or ill, *bene aut male mereri de*.
 servile, *servilis*, *e*.
 session, *consessus*, *ūs* (but may be omitted; as, *in Senatum venire*).
 set, *pono*; ¹ — on foot, *incipio*,³ *cepi*, *ceptum*; — out, *proficiscor*,³ *fectus*; — sail, *navigo*.¹
 several, *plures*, *ium*; *singuli*.
 severe, *severus*.
 severely, *saeviter*.
 severity, *severitas*, *atis* (F.).
 shade, *umbra*, *ae*.
 shaft, *telum*, *jaculum*.
 shame, *ignominia*, *ae*, *dedecus*, *oris* (N.).
 share (v.), *participo*.¹
 share (n.), *pars*, *tis* (F.).
 she, *ea*, *illa*.
 she-wolf, *lupa*, *ae*.
 shelter, *tego*,³ *texi*, *tectum*.
 shepherd, *pastor*, *oris*.
 ship, *navis*, *is* (F.).
 shivered, *pulsus*.
 shore, *litus*, *oris* (N.); go on —, *in terram egredi*.
 short, *brevis*, *e*.

shortly after, *paulo post*.
 should, &c., see p. 63.
 show, *demonstro*.¹
 shrink, *abhorreo*.³
 sick, to be, *aegrotō*.¹
 sickness (sea-sickness), *nausea*, *ae*.
 side (party), *pars*, *tis* (F.); on the —, *a parte* (often plural).
 siege, for the siege of, *ad oppugnandum*.
 sight, *conspectus*, *ūs* (M.), *spectaculum*, *i*.
 sign, signal, *signum*, *i*.
 signify, *significo*.¹
 silence, *silentium*, *i*; in —, *silentio*, *tacite*; to keep —, *silere*, *tacere*. [*modo*.]
 simple, *inconditus*; simply, *since*, *post* (acc.; see p. 40); ever —, *jam inde a*; *postea*.
 singular, *mirus*.
 sister, *soror*, *oris*.
 sit, *sedeo*,² *sedi*. — situation, *res*.
 skilful, *peritus* (gen.).
 skill, *ars*, *artis* (F.).
 slaughter, *caedes*, *is* (F.).
 slave, *servus*, *i*; to be a —, *servio*; ⁴ — market, *grex vernalium*.
 slay, *interficio*,³ *feci*, *fectum*, *caedo*,³ *cecidī*, *caesus*; — with cruelty, *trucido*.¹
 slayer, *interfector*, *oris*.
 slight, *parvus*.
 sloth, *ignavia*, *ae*.
 small, *parvus*.
 smite, *percutio*,³ *cussi*.
 snake, *anguis*, *is*, *serpens*, *tis* (M.).
 snatch, *cripio*,³ *ui*.

- so, *sic, ita*; — . . as, *ita . . ut, tam . . quam*; — many, *tot*; — great, *tantus*; — that, *adeo ut*; will have it so, *sic velle*.
- soldier, *miles, itis*.
- solicitous, *sollicitus*.
- solid, *firmus*.
- some, *aliquid, nonnullus* (p. 18); — thing, *aliquid*; — time, *aliquamdiu*; — times, *interdum*; — . . . others, *alii . . alii*.
- son, *filius, i*; — in-law, *gener, eri*.
- song, *carmen, inis* (N.).
- soon, *brevi tempore*; (presently), *mox*; — after, *paulo post*; as — as, *ut primum*.
- soothsayer, *haruspex, icis*.
- sorrow, *dolor, oris* (M.).
- soul, *animus, i; anima, ae*.
- sound, *sanus*.
- south, *meridionalis* (adj.).
- Spain, *Hispania, ae*; (adj.), *Hispanicus*.
- spare, *parco, ³peperci*; (refrain), *tempero*.¹ Spartan, *Spartanus*.
- speak, *loquor, ³locutus*; — of, *commemoro*.¹
- spectacle, *spectaculum, i*.
- spectre, *species, ei* (F.). [*cere*.
- speculator, to be a, *quaestum* fa-
- speech, *sermo, onis* (M.).
- spirit, *animus, i* (M.), (pl.).
- sport, *lusio, onis* (F.).
- spot, *locus, i*; plur., *loci*.
- spring, *ver, veris* (N.).
- square (of a city), *platea, ae*.
- staff, *baculum, i*.
- stand, *sto, ¹steti, statum*; — aside, *de via decedere*; — (bear), *ferre*; (be), *esse*.
- state, *civitas, atis; res publica* (F.).
- stately, *procerus*.
- statue, *statua, ae*.
- stature, *statura, ae*.
- steep, *arduus*.
- steer, *guberno*.¹
- step aside, *decedo*.³
- stepmother, *noverca, ae*.
- stick (n.), *fustis, is* (M.).
- stifle, *extinguo*.³
- still, *etiam tum, etiam nunc, adhuc*.
- stir up, *excito*.¹
- stone, *saxum, i*.
- stop, *moror*.¹
- storm, violent, *magna tempestas*.
- story, *fabula, ae*.
- straggle, *vagor*.¹
- stranded, *in terram delatus*.
- strange, *novus*.
- stream, *flumen, inis* (N.).
- strength, *vires, ium* (F.).
- strengthen, *confirmo*.¹
- stretching, *patens, tis*.
- strict, *severus, exactus*.
- strictly, *severe*.
- strike, *percutio*; ³ — down, *caedo*; ⁸ — a blow, *inferre*.
- striking (keen), *argutus*.
- stroke, *mulceo, ²mulsi*.
- strong, *validus*.
- stronghold, *praesidium, i*.
- strongly, *vehementer*.
- studious, *studiosus*.
- stupidity, *stultitia, ae*.
- subject, to be, *servire*.
- subjects, *cives, ium*.
- submission, *obsequium, i*.
- submit, *se dedere*.

subterranean, subterraneus.
succeed, succedo,³ cessi.
success, prosperus eventus,
successus, ūs (M.).
successful, felix, icis.
succor (help), subvenire (dat.).
suckle, lacto.¹
such, talis, e; is, ea, id; tam.
sudden, subitus. [subito.
suddenly (on a sudden), repente,
suffer, fero, tuli; patior.³
sufficiency, satis. [consciscere.
suicide, to commit, mortem sibi
suit, convenio.⁴
suitable, idoneus.
summer, aestas, atis (F.); (adj.),
aestivus.
summit, summus mons.
summon, convoco.¹
sun, sol, solis (M.).
superior, superior, melior; abso-
lutely, optimus.
support, confirmo.¹
suppose, puto.¹
supreme, supremus, summus.
surely, profecto.
surface of earth, omnis terra.
surmount, surpass, supero.¹
surrender (v.), dedo,³ dedidi.
surrender (n.), deditio, onis (F.).
surrounded, stipatus.
survive, superesse, superstes
(itis) esse with dat.
suspend, suspendo,³ di, sum.
suspense, cura, ae.
swallow (n.), hirundo, inis (F.).
swamp, palus, udis (F.).
swear, juro;¹ — together, con-
juro.¹
sweet, dulcis, e.
sweetly, jucunde.

swim, no, nato, trano.¹
symptom, indicium, i.
Syracuse, Syracusae, arum (F.).
Syracusan, Syracusanus, a,
um.
Syrian, Syrus, a, um.

T.

take, capio,³ cepi, captum, porto,¹
duco;³ (enjoy), fruor³; —
away, adimo,³ emi, emptum;
— in charge, accipio;³ —
part in, communico;¹ — claim
for one's self, sibi adrogare;
— prisoner, capere; — refuge,
confugere; — up arms, arma
capere; — by the hand, manu
arripere; (follow), sequi; —
seriously, in serium vertere.
task, opus, eris (N.).
talents, ingenium, i (use sing.).
tall, procerus.
taunt, obicio,³ exprobro.¹
teach, doceo,² ui.
teacher, doctor, oris.
tear away, detraho,³ xi, ctum.
tear (n.), lacrima, ae.
tell, nuntio,¹ narro,¹ dico.³
temperance, temperantia, ae,
continentia, ae.
tempest, tempestas, atis (F.).
temple, templum, i, aedes, is (F.).
terms, condiciones, um (F.).
terrify, terreo,² ui, itum.
testimony, testimonium, i.
than, quam, (or abl.).
thanks, grates, gratiae, arum.
that, ut, quod (see pp. 54, 75);
— not, ne; but —, quin.

the, often expressed by *ille*.
 theatre, *scena*, *ae*. thence, *inde*.
 then, *tum*, *inde*, *deinde*, *igitur*.
 there, *ibi*. — their, *eorum*, *suus*.
 therefore, *itaque*, *qua de causa*.
 thing, *res*, *rei* (F.).
 think, *puto*,¹ *reor*,² *ratus*.
 this, *hic*, *iste*; often *qui*.
 this day's, *hodiernus*.
 thong, *lorum*, *i*.
 though, *quamquam*, *etiam si*.
 thoughtlessness, *temeritas*, *atis* (F.).
 thought, *consilium*, *i*.
 thousand, *mille* (§ 18, I. e); one of a —, *unus de multis*.
 threaten, *minor*, *minitor*¹ (dat. of person); *impendeo*² (dat.).
 thronged, *refertus*.
 through, *per*, *propter*, or by abl.
 throw, *jacio*,³ *jeci*, *jactum*; — off, *abicio*,³ *jeci*.
 thrown (down), *dejectus*.
 thus, *ita*.
 Tiber, the river, *Tiberis*, *is* (M.); the river-god, *Tiberinus*, *i*.
 till, *donec*. — timidity, *formido*.
 time, *tempus*, *oris* (N.); for some —, *aliquamdiu*; from — to —, *interdum*; from that — forth, *jam inde*; at the same —, *tamen*, *nihilominus*.
 tired, *fessus*; to be —, *taedet* (§ 50, 4. c). [dative.
 to, *ad* (acc.); often sign of to-day, *hodie*, *nunc*.
 together, *unā*.
 toil, *labor*, *oris* (M.).
 tomb, *sepulcrum*, *i*. [*crastinus*.
 to-morrow, *cras*; of —, (adj.),
 tongue, *lingua*, *ae*.

too, *nimis*; or express by comparative; (also), *quoque*.
 tooth, *dens*, *tis* (M.); grip of —, *morsus*, *ūs* (M.).
 torch, *fax*, *facis* (F.).
 torment (n.), *tormentum*, *i*; *cruciatu*, *ūs*.
 torture (n.), *tormentum*, *i*.
 towards, *erga* (acc.), *ad*, *versus*.
 town, *municipium*, *i*; *oppidum*, *i*; (village), *vicus*, *i* (M.).
 trace, *duco*.³
 traitor, *proditor*, *oris*.
 tranquillity, *tranquillitas*, *atis* (F.).
 transaction, *res*, *rei* (F.).
 transgress, *minus obediens esse* (dat.).
 travel, *iter facere*.
 traveller, *viator*, *oris*.
 traverse, *transire*.
 treachery, *perfidia*, *ae*.
 treason, *majestas*, *atis* (§ 50, 4. b).
 treasury, *aerarium*, *i*.
 treat, *tracto*; ¹ — as a son, *in filii loco habere*.
 treatise, *liber*, *bri*.
 treaty, *indutiae*, *arum*.
 tree, *arbor*. — trial, *tormenta*.
 tribe, *tribus*, *ūs*; *gens*, *tis* (F.).
 tribune, *tribunus*, *i*.
 trifling, *minimus*.
 tripod, *cortina*, *ae*. [dis (F.).
 triumph, *triumphus*, *i*; *laus*,
 triumphal, *triumphalis*, *e*.
 troops, *milites*, *um*.
 trouble, *res adversae* (plur.).
 troubled, to be, *laborare*.
 Troy, *Troja*, *ae*; of —, *Trojanus*, *a*, *um*.

true, *verus, a, um; quidem*.
 trust, *confido*.³
 trumpet, *tuba, ae*.
 truth, *veritas, atis (F.)*.
 turf, *caespites, um (plur.)*.
 turn, *verto*,¹ *ti, sum*; — away,
avertor; ³ — out-of-doors,
foras eicio.³
 tusk, *dens, tis (M.)*.
 two, *duo*; where only —, *ambo*.
 tyranny, *dominatio, onis (F.)*.
 tyrant, *tyrannus, i*.

U.

Ufentine, *Ufens, tis*.
 unambitious, *minime ambitiosus*.
 uncle, *avunculus, i*.
 uncover, *detego*.³
 undaunted, *invictus*.
 under, *sub (acc. or abl.)*.
 understand, *recte aestimo*,¹
teneo.³
 undertake, *adgredior, suscipio*.
 undoubtedly, *sine dubio*.
 unfeeling, *durus*.
 ungrateful, *ingratus*.
 unjust, *injustus*.
 unimpeached, *integer incolumisque*.
 unhappy, *miser, era, um*.
 universal, *communis, e*.
 unless, *nisi*. — until, *donec*.
 unprincipled, *improbis*.
 unprofitable, *inutilis, e*.
 unrighteous, *iniquus*.
 unworthy, *indignus*.
 upbraid, *obicio*,³ *jeci*.
 upper classes, *nobiles*.

upon (as living —), *ex*.
 upward, *sursum*.
 urge, *suadeo* ³ (*dat.*).
 use (v.), *utor*,² *usus*.
 use (n.), *usus, ūs (M.)*.
 useless, *inutilis, e*.
 utmost (adj.), *maximus*.
 utterance (n.), *vox*.

V.

vast, *ingens, tis*.
 vainly, *frustra, nequicquam*.
 Valerian, *Valerius, a, um*.
 valor, *virtus, utis (F.)*.
 value, *pretium, i*.
 Velians, *Veientes, ium*.
 vein, *vena, ae*.
 vengeance, *ulcisci*; of —, *use gerund*. — vessel, *navis (F.)*.
 venture, *audeo*,³ *ausus*.
 very, *per*, in compos. (§ 17, 5. *d*); — same, *ipse, a, um; graviter*; often by superl.
 vice, *vitium, i. flagitium, i (N.)*.
 victim, *hostia, victima, ae (F.)*.
 victor, victorious, *victor, oris (M.)*; *victrix, icis (F.)*.
 victory, *victoria, ae*.
 view, *cogitatio, onis (F.)*; *sententia, ae*; to be with a —, *pertinere ad*.
 vigorous, *acer, cris; nervosus*.
 violence, *vis (F.)*.
 violent, *violentus*.
 violently, *vehementer, vi*.
 virtue, *virtus, utis (F.)*.
 voluntary, *voluntarius*.
 vote, *sententia, ae*.
 vow, *votum, i*.

W.

wages, *merces, edis* (F.).
 wait, *maneo*,² *mansi*; — for, *expecto*.¹
 wall (of house), *paries, etis* (M.); (of city), *murus, moenia*.
 wander, *vagor*.¹
 want to, *opus esse* (dat. of person and abl. of thing); to be in — of, *indigere* (gen. of thing).
 war, *bellum, i* (N.).
 war-horse, *equus militaris*.
 warlike, *bellicosus*.
 warrior, *vir fortis*.
 warn, *moneo*,² warning, *monitus*.
 wasted, *confectus*.
 watch, *observo*.¹
 water, *aqua, ae*.
 wave, *fluctus, ūs* (M.).
 way, *via, ae*; a good —, *aliquantum*.
 weaken, *debilito*.¹
 wealth, *copiae, arum*.
 wealthy, *locuples, tis*.
 wear, *gero*,³ *gessi, gestum*.
 well, *bene*.
 what? *quid?* — sort? *qualis?*
 whatever, *quod*, with indic.
 when, *cum, ubi, ut* (p. 67).
 whenever, *cum* (with indic.).
 where, *ubi, quo, qua* (§ 41, 2. a.). [iive.
 whether, *utrum . . an, sive . .*
 which, rel., *quod; qualis, e*; int,
 while, *cum*. [*quis, uter* (p. 17).
 white, *albus*.
 whither, *quo*.
 who, *qui*; whoever, *quisquis, quicumque, siquis*.

who? (interrog.) *quis* (see p. 17).
 whole, *totus* (gen. *ius*).
 wholly, *plane, omnino*.
 why, *cur, quam ob rem*.
 wide, *latus*; (of measure), *in latitudinem*.
 wicked, *sceleratus*.
 wife, *uxor, oris*.
 wild, *ferus, immanis, e*; — beast, *fera*; — fig, *caprificus*.
 will, *volo, velle, volui*.
 willing, *paratus ad* (p. 76).
 willingly, *volens, tis*.
 win, *concilio*,¹ *pario*;² — triumph, *triumphum ago*.³
 wind, *ventus, i*.
 window, *fenestra, ae*.
 winter (v.), *hiberno*.¹
 wisdom, *consilium, i*.
 wish, *volo, cupio*,² *opto*.¹
 with, *cum*; with me, *mecum*; — himself, &c., *secum*.
 within, *intra, inter*; of time, often expressed by abl. (see p. 40).
 without, *sine*; — doing a thing (see p. 60).
 wolf, *lupus, i* (M.); *lupa, ae* (F.).
 woman, *mulier, femina*.
 wonder (n.), *miraculum, i*.
 wont, to be, *soleo*,² *solitus*.
 woodpecker, *picus, i*.
 word, *verbum, i*.
 work, *ministerium, i*.
 world, *orbis terrarum; homines, um*.
 worn out (by age), *aetate confectus*.
 worship, *colo*,² *colui, cultum*.
 worst, *pessimus*.

worthy, *dignus* (with abl.).
would, &c., see p. 63.
wound, *vulnus, eris* (N.).
wounded, *vulneratus*.
wretched, *miser, era, um*.
write, *scribo*,³ *psi, ptum*; —
 down, *conscribo*.³
wrong, *pravus*.

Y.

year, *annus*, *i*.
yesterday, *heri*; of —, *hesternus*. [*etiam*.]
yet, *tamen*; not —, *nondum*
you (sing.), *tu*; (plur.), *vos*.

young, *juvenis, is*; — man, *adolescens, tis*; *juvenis, is*; — of birds, *pullus, i*.
younger, *minor, oris*.
your (of sing. subject), *tuus, a, um*; *vester* (of plur.).
yourself, *ipse (tu), te*.
yourselves, *ipsi, vos*.
youth, *puer, eri*; *juventus, tutis* (F.); young man, *adolescens, tis*.

Z.

Zama (adj.), *Zamensis*, *e.*
zeal, *alacritas*, *atis* (F.).

PART SECOND.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Exercises given in Part I. have been chosen chiefly to illustrate the constructions of Latin syntax, and the proper words and phrases have been given in a special Vocabulary. In those which are to follow, the student is expected to make the selection of words and phrases for himself, and must rely on his general knowledge of the language, or on a general Lexicon. An English-Latin lexicon should, however, be used only for the suggestion of words which do not occur to the mind from a knowledge of the language. The real guide should be the Latin Lexicon, in connection with passages cited in it, or else remembered.

A few points should be put clearly before the mind at starting.

I. CHOICE OF THE WORD OR PHRASE.

Single words, in all languages, commonly express not single ideas, but groups of ideas. They cover, as it were, not *points*, but *surfaces*. The surface thus covered by parallel words is very often quite different in different languages. Words do not coincide, but only partly overlap; and hardly any word in one language is exactly equivalent in meaning to the apparently corresponding word in another. Thus the English **BOLD** and **BOLDNESS** correspond most nearly to the Latin *audax* and *audacia*; but these often have an idea of blame, which is not in the English words: *homo*

audax is a man bad as well as bold. On the other hand, the verb TO LIE in English implies a moral offence, while the corresponding Latin *mentior* conveys no such opprobrium, though it may be conveyed by the context. The word LAW answers most nearly to *lex*, which, however, is limited to written or statute law; so that the abstract expression THE LAW (including common law) would have to be rendered by *jura atque leges*, or some similar phrase.

Besides this difference in the original meaning of words, their derived or figurative meanings are often very widely different. Thus the English noun FORM may mean things so different as shape (*figura*), manner (*modus*), vain show (*simulatio*), ceremony (*ritus*), a bench at school (*scamnum*), or a hare's bed (*latibulum*). The adjective RIGHT may be *aequus* (a right decision), *aptus* (a right selection), or *dexter* (on the right hand). The verb TO RAISE may be *tollo*, *levo* (to lift), *augeo* (as of wages), *struo* (of buildings), *cio*, *moveo* (to raise pity, &c.), *conscribo* (of troops), *colo* (of grain and fruits). On the other hand, the Latin TOLLO may mean *to lift*, *exalt*, *take away*, *weigh* (anchor), *destroy*; SIGNUM is *a mark* or *sign*, *signal*, *standard*, *statue*, *constellation*; GRAVIS is *heavy*, *weighty* (dignified or influential), *burdensome*, *offensive*, *sickly*.

This difference is especially to be noted in the case of English words derived from Latin. The apparent likeness, in such cases, is one of the commonest sources of error. Usually the corresponding Latin words are much the more energetic and forcible, since they are the growth of roots still living and vigorous in the language. Thus the Latin LABOR is *toil* or *hardship*; DEPRIMERE ("depress"), *to sink*, as a ship in battle; OPPRIMERE ("oppress"), *to overwhelm*, or *smother*; SUPPRIMERE ("suppress"), *to trample down*. The judicious selection of a Latin term will thus frequently restore to life a dead or fated metaphor; while a vague or general term — such as is often given in English by a Latin derivative — may require to be rendered in Latin by some qualifying phrase.

Hence, in translating into Latin, —

a. Notice carefully the exact *shade of meaning* in which the English word is used, and see that the Latin word covers the ground. In securing this, it is often necessary to notice the other words in the sentence. Thus *drown* may often be rendered by *submergere*, because the rest of the sentence shows what is meant; but if not, then the idea of *death* by drowning must be brought out by some explanatory word or phrase.

b. Observe the cases where Latin makes distinctions of meaning not recognized in English. Thus, *CITY* may be either *urbs* (a collection of streets, houses, &c.), *oppidum* (a fortified or garrison town), or *civitas* (a political community). An *ENEMY* may be *inimicus* (a personal enemy), or *hostis* (a public foe). *GLORY* may be either *fama* (reputation in common talk), *decus* (outward splendor or distinction), *laus* (the approval and praise of men), or *gloria* (the more general word).

c. In a far greater number of cases, English makes distinctions not recognized in Latin.* For example, *society*, *participation*, *association*, *partnership*, *alliance*, and several other words, are represented by the Latin *SOCIETAS*. If it is not clear from the context which is meant, some descriptive or limiting word must be added: as, *societas generis humani*, *societas et communicatio*, *societas et foedus*, and so on (see *e*, below).

cc. In general, the Latin prefers to make a *person* subject rather than a *thing*, a thing rather than an abstraction, so that an idea is often expressed in Latin from a point of view different from our own. Thus,—

Caesar stationed the auxiliaries . . . so that they might make a display, *alarios constituit . . . ut ad spectem alariis uteretur.*

So *to serve for any thing* may often be rendered by *UTI*, governing the noun which expresses the English subject (but compare Gr. § 233).

d. In many expressions we find an English phrase of two or more words rendered in Latin by a single term; as, *a sense of duty*, *OFFICIUM*; *a feeling of shame*, *PUDOR*; *presence of mind*, *ANIMUS* (alone, but also with *praesens* or *praesentia*).

* English employs, roughly, about five times as large a vocabulary as Latin, with a far smaller proportion of regular derivatives.

dd. As in all languages, there are in Latin many technical or semi-technical expressions, which must be carefully noticed. Such a word or phrase will often be suggested by some word in the English expression from the Latin equivalent of which it is often a regular derivative.

e. There are many words in English which have no natural equivalent whatever in Latin. These must be analyzed, and expressed by phrases; often substituting special and concrete words for general and abstract ones; and oftener putting the force of an adjective into a verb, or noun, or adverb. Thus, —

1. Accomplice, *scelerum (consiliorum) conscitus*.
2. Art, *artes fingendi et pingendi*.
3. Conscience, *consciens animus*.
4. Historian, *rerum gestarum scriptor*.
5. Inspiration, *divinus quidam adflatus*.
6. Lawgiver, *qui leges ponit*.
7. Panic, *res trepida*.
8. Patriotism, *studium rei publicae*, and the like.
9. Rhetoric, *rhethorum praecepta*.

(Stereotyped expressions, however, of this kind, should be avoided.)

f. Latin generally prefers to express *in concrete terms* what English gives in abstract (compare *t*). Thus, *strength, vigor, energy, pungency*, may be expressed by *sanguis, lacerti, nervi, aculei*; *expression or sentiment* by *vox*. So, too, the phrases, —

1. I do not fear a bad man's anger, *improbum iratum non metuo*.
2. The assassination of Cæsar seemed to many a glorious act, *occisus Cæsar multis pulcherrimum facinus videbatur*.
3. Every evil at its birth seems harmless, *omne malum nascens innocuum videtur*.
4. The world hates ingratitude, *omnes immemorem benefici oderunt*.
5. There is a wide difference between learning and ignorance, *plurimum interest inter doctum et rudem*.
6. Firmness and dignity are characteristics of true courage, *constantem et gravem eum esse volumus quem fortem dicimus*.

7. He had read no poetry, and knew nothing of oratory,
nullum poëtam legerat, nullum oratorem noverat.

ff. Nouns, especially abstracts, are less common in Latin than in English. Hence abstract qualities, if connected with the subject, must often be rendered by adjectives or participles; if connected with the predicate, by adverbs. Names of actions (verbal abstracts) are expressed by verbs, colored if necessary by adverbs or adverbial phrases.

g. Even the few abstract nouns found in Latin are constantly made concrete, especially by using them in the plural: as,

1. The life of all, *vitae omnium.*
2. The immortality of the soul, *aeternitas animorum.*
3. The cold of the winters, *frigora hiberna.*
4. Some cases of superiority, *quaedam excellentiae.*
5. Sharing in misfortune (of several persons), *societates calamitatum.*

h. The two languages often differ in their modes of expressing the Degree of a quality. Thus, *as much* or *equally* is often rendered by *no less*; and conversely, *less* by *not so much*, *more* by *so much as no other*, and the like, according to convenience of expression in the particular case.

i. Certain *literal forms of speech* are frequent in Latin, presenting the object as it appears to the eye or comes at first hand before the thought. Thus,—

1. They refresh themselves with food and sleep, *corpora cibo somnoque curant.*
2. To relieve one from superstition or disease, *aut religione animos aut corpora morbis levare.*
3. In the face of the world, *ante omnium oculos.*
4. A musical ear detects very slight discords, *musicorum aures vel minima dissona sentiunt.*
5. I never lose sight of him, *numquam ab eo oculos deicio.* So—
7. The tribunes were especially alarmed, *praecipuus pavor tribunos invaserat.* (Here the personification adds to the vigor of the expression; so, *contemptor animus, tiro exercitus*, &c.).

ii. The same tendency to literalness is seen in the use of a *second noun* ("hendiadys"), where English uses an adjective, a phrase, or a compound (compare Part I. p. 5). Thus,—

1. Rational instruction, *ratio et doctrina*.
2. An eye-witness, *spectator et testis*.
3. A shameful disaster, *ignominia et calamitas*.
4. Art-culture, *artificium et expolitio*.

j. English abounds in effete metaphors — rhetorical expressions (noun or verb) — which have lost their force and become mere conventional phrases: these must often be expressed by some simple word, or wholly omitted, and the bare substance of the thought given in Latin (compare *l*, *m*, below). Thus, —

1. Homer flourished many years before, *Homerus multis ante annis fuit* (also, *floruit*).
2. Virtue in solitude could not reach its highest development, *virtus solitaria ad ea quae summa sunt non potuit pervenire*.

Examples may be found in such nouns as *object*, *point*, *feature*, *circumstance*, *instance*, *capacity*, *person*, *expression*, *elements*; in the verbs *observe*, *remark*, *manage*, *continue*, *discuss*, *avail one's self*, *assure*, *represent*, *allude*, *qualify*, *enhance*, *convey*, *embrace*, *exist*, *constitute*, *deliver*, *succeed in*, *manage to*; and particularly in adverbial and prepositional phrases, such as *regarding*, *concerning*, *with the view of* (UT), *in reference to* (AD), *on account of* (OB, PROPTER), *in spite of all that* (TAMEN), &c.

k. Latin often prefers an abstract noun to an adjective; thus making the quality the main thing, and (as it were) embodying it. Thus, —

1. Isocrates had many pupils of high rank, *Isocrates nobilitate discipulorum floruit*.
2. It takes much water to quench a furious blaze, *vis flammae aquae multitudine opprimitur*.
3. Orators are and always have been few, *magna oratorum est semperque fuit paucitas*.
4. A gloomy winter was followed by a sickly summer, *tristem hiemem pestibus aestas exceptit*.
5. Weak men were overcome with superstition (i. e. because they were weak), *superstitio hominum imbecillitatem occupavit*.
6. When the pleasant spring-time is past, then come summer and autumn, *praeterita verni temporis suavitate, aestas venit et auctumnus*.

l. The simplicity of Latin requires that force or color *shall be given to an expression but once*, whether in subject or predicate ; and that neutral or unemphatic phrases shall be used in other parts of the clause (compare *f* and *h*). Thus, —

1. Immense indignation prevailed, *indignatio ingens erat.*
2. But how vast the privilege, for the soul to live! *At illud quanti est, unum vivere!*
3. In both cases he acted with dignity, *utrumque egit graviter.*
4. All incidents of life which happen in accordance with nature, *omnia quae secundum naturam fiunt.*
5. For even these tributes are honorable, *haec enim ipsa sunt honorabilia.*

To the same habit of mind may be referred the frequent use of such colorless words as *ars, genus, locus, ratio, res, sententia, studium, vis* ; *afficio, ago, capio, facio, habeo, possum, sum, versor* (see Lexicon under these words).

ll. An English sentence is often filled out with words not strictly necessary to the sense, but inserted for fulness or rotundity of expression. In general, it is unclassical to express any thing which is obvious from the context, or to repeat what has once been said in other words in the same clause or phrase (compare *l*).

m. English narrative abounds in varied descriptive phrases alluding to an idea or person once expressed : these must be omitted in Latin ; or, if something is necessary to prevent ambiguity, a simple pronoun is used. Proper names are repeated, but not so often as in English. Thus, the words *italicized* in the following extract (recounting the death of the elder Pliny) would be omitted in a Latin version of the passage, or else expressed by pronouns : —

“As the shades of evening gathered, the brightness of the flames became more striking ; but, to calm the panic of those around him, *the philosopher* assured them that they arose from cottages on the slope, which the alarmed natives had abandoned to the descending flakes of fire. . . . The sea was agitated, and abandoned by every bark. *Pliny*, wearied and perplexed, refused to stir farther ; while his companions, all but two body-slaves, fled in terror. Some, who looked back in their flight, affirmed that *the old man* rose once with the help of his attendants, but immediately fell again, overpowered, as it seemed, with the deadly vapors.”

n. But if the allusive or descriptive word is essential to the idea to be conveyed, it must be given outright in a clause or special expression : as,

But the veteran could not be deceived: *ille autem—ut qui esset rei bellicae peritissimus—illud non potuit.*

o. The tendency in Latin to a direct form of statement requires that the main idea should be asserted directly in the main clause, and not hidden in a relative clause, participle, or adverb (compare v). The necessary emphasis is to be given by position. For example, —

1. A fresh blow came, that crushed the city, *clades nova civitatem adflixit.*
2. It is these that delight in flattery, *hos delectat adsentatio.*
3. You are the very man I was looking for, *te ipsum quaerebam.*

II. STRUCTURE OF THE SENTENCE.

THE best English writers give a connected story or argument in short clear sentences, each distinct from the rest, and saying one thing by itself. In Latin, on the contrary, the story or argument is viewed as a whole ; and a logical relation among all its parts is carefully indicated, so that the whole forms a compact group. For example, —

But gloomy silence and voiceless sorrow had paralyzed the minds of the inhabitants. For very dread they forgot what they were leaving behind, what they were carrying with them. With no fixed idea, and inquiring every man of his neighbor, they were at one moment standing at their thresholds, at another wandering restlessly through their homes to see the end.

Sed silentium triste ac tacita maestitia ita defixit omnium animos, ut, prae metu oblitii quid relinquerent quid secum ferrent, deficiente consilio, rogitantesque alii alios, nunc in liminibus starent, nunc errabundi domos suas, ultimum illud visuri, pervagarentur.

p. In particular, so much of a statement as can be so treated, with its attendant circumstances, modifications, &c., is put into a

single complex sentence, called a Period (§ 346. *a-d*; compare *s*). Thus, —

Qui cum, multis circa finitimos populos legationibus terra marique nequicquam missis, nisi quod ex Etruria haud ita multum frumenti advectum est, nullum momentum annonae fecisset; et, revolutus ad dispensationem inopiae, profiteri cogendo frumentum et vendere quod usu menstuo superesset, fraudandoque parte diurni cibi servitia, criminando inde et obiciendo irae populi frumentarios, acerba inquisitione aperiret magis quam levaret inopiam; multi ex plebe spe amissa potius quam ut cruciarentur trahendo animam, capitibus obvolutis se in Tiberim praecipitaverunt.

Here the principal fact expressed in the main clause is, that many of the people drowned themselves rather than submit to slow starvation; while the cruel policy that drove them to it is described in subordinate clauses. In English it might be told as follows: —

He sent a number of embassies by land and sea to the surrounding nations, but effected no result beyond the importation of an insignificant amount of corn from Etruria, and produced no movement in the market. On applying himself to the administration of the meagre supplies, he compelled people to make a report of the corn they held, and to offer for sale all that exceeded the necessary supply of their wants for a month. He robbed the slaves of part of their daily rations, and proceeded to libel the corn-merchants, and expose them to the fury of the populace. By this galling inquisitorial policy he revealed rather than relieved the distress. Many of the lower orders, in utter despair, bandaged the eyes and threw themselves into the Tiber, rather than endure the torment of a prolonged existence.

q. Even when long periods are not used, still the logical connection is indicated by the use of connecting Relatives (see § 201. *e*); or (*qq*) by Correlative words and Particles, especially *idem*, *itaque*, *autem*, *enim*, *vero*, *quidem*.

r. But, in coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are omitted oftener than in English (*asyndeton*); the connection being made clear by the Position of words and by Antithesis.

s. Of two coördinate clauses with *and*, the less important is merged in the other by the aid of participles and subordinate phrases. In such cases a change of subject should be avoided.

t. A change of subject should be marked by the introduction of a pronoun, if the new subject has been already mentioned in the preceding sentence. But (*tt*) the needless use of pronouns may be avoided by change of structure.

u. A noun should be kept in the same case if possible.

In illustration of these points, compare the following examples : —

1. Then he called them together, and having briefly addressed them waited a little, and led them out with him. *Tunc convocatos* cum breviter admonuisset, paulisper moratus secum eduxit.*

2. The plan was universally approved, and its execution was intrusted to the consul. *Cunctis rem approbantibus,* negotium consuli datur.*

3. This matter was soon accomplished, and the legions returned to winter-quarters. *Eo celeriter confecto negotio,* in hiberna legiones redierunt.*

4. When Midas the Phrygian was a child, and asleep, some ants piled grains of corn upon his lips. *Midae illi Phrygio,* cum puer esset, dormienti formicæ in os tritici grana congesserunt.*

5. They came to the king at Pergamus. He received the ambassadors kindly, and conducted them to Pessinus. *Pergamum ad regem venerunt, quos* legatos comiter exceptos Pessinuntem deduxit.*

6. If I cannot crush the pain, I will hide it. *Dolorem* si non potero frangere, occultabo.*

7. When the barbarians saw that he had escaped the flames, they hurled darts at him from a distance, and killed him. *Quem* ut barbari incendium effugisse viderunt, telis eminus emissis interfecerunt.*

8. When Zopyrus, who professed to be able to read every one's character from his outward appearance, had at a party made a large catalogue of moral defects to reproach Socrates with, the rest laughed him to scorn ; but Socrates came to his assistance. *Cum multa in conventu vitia collegisset in eum Zopyrus, qui se naturam cujusque ex forma perspicere profitebatur, derisus est a ceteris, ab ipso autem Socrate sublevatus**

9. For they believe that these divinities were born in the realm, and that grain was first discovered in their land ; and that Libera, whom they also call Proserpine, was carried off from the grove of Enna. It is said that Ceres, in the course of her anxious search for her daughter, kindled her torch at the fires that blaze from Etna's summit ; and, holding it before her, wandered over the whole world. *Nam et natas esse has in iis locis deas, et fruges in ea terra primum repertas esse arbitrantur, et raptam esse Liberam, quam eandem Proserpinam vocant, ex Hennensium nemore. Quam cum investigare et conquirere Ceres vellet,* dicitur inflammasse taedas iis ignibus qui ex Aetnae vertice erumpunt ; quas sibi cum ipsa praeferret, orbem omnem peragrassasse terrarum.*

v. In turning loose sentences into periods, be sure to get the main idea in the main clause, and keep the other clauses in their proper relations (compare o). In general, the main subject or

object must be put in the main clause, not in the subordinate ones. Thus —

1. When Hannibal had reviewed his auxiliary forces, he set out for Gades. *Hannibal, cum recensuisset auxilia, Gades profectus est.*

2. The augur Tiresias is described by the poets as a philosopher, and is never represented as bewailing his blindness. *Augurem Tiresiam, quem sapientem fingunt poetae, numquam inducunt deplorantem caecitatem suam.*

3. The Volscians found that, now they were severed from every other hope, there was but little hope in prolonging the conflict. In addition to other disadvantages, they had engaged on a spot ill adapted for fighting, and worse for flight. Cut to pieces on every side, they abandoned the contest and cried for quarter. After surrendering their commander and delivering up their arms, they passed under the yoke; and with one garment each were sent to their homes, covered with disgrace and defeat. *Volsci exiguam spem in armis, alia undique abscissa, cum tentassent, praeter cetera adversa, loco quoque iniquo ad pugnam congressi, iniquiore ad fugam, cum ab omni parte caederentur, ad preces a certamine versi, dedito imperatore traditisque armis, sub jugum missi, cum singulis vestimentis, ignominiae cladisque pleni dimittuntur.*

Here the main thought is *the return of the Volscians*: the circumstances of the surrender, &c., are put in the several subordinate clauses.

vv. The clauses should be arranged in the natural order of time or logical sequence, — cause before result; purpose, manner, and the like, before the act. (There are, however, many exceptions to this rule, from the tendency to put the more important first or else last.)

w. Latin has a great fondness for antithesis and sharp contrasts, setting one word phrase or clause against another. This tendency will often control the order of words, phrases, or clauses.

x. As to the order of words: let the MAIN WORD be seized and put at the beginning (see Part I. p. 2). By this means the drift of the clause or sentence may almost always be indicated in advance.

y. A verb in the active voice is often rendered in Latin by the passive, and conversely, to avoid change of subject, or to secure a personal or concrete subject rather than an impersonal or abstract one (compare *ce*, with Lesson 20).

2. There are many idiomatic phrases which are to be rendered by Particles in Latin, especially in colloquial expressions, such as: WELL NOW, *atque*; TO BE SURE, BY THE WAY, IN FACT (also WHY!), *quidem*; FOR, YOU SEE, *elenim*; AND AFTER ALL, *atque*; CONSIDERING, *ut*; I SAY, *igitur*. YES may be given by *etiam*, *maxime*, *vero*, with a pronoun, or by repeating the verb; NO by *immo*, *non*, *minime*, or, repeating a word with the negative (see Grammar, § 212. a). These can only be learned by practice with the Latin particles.

III. IDIOMATIC PHRASES.

THE following examples include most of the idiomatic usages which have already been explained, together with some others, brought together here for convenient reference:—

1. I come to help you, *adjutor tibi venio* (Part I. page 3).
2. I remember when a boy, *puer memini*.
3. Fabius in his second consulship, *Fabius consul iterum*.
4. A continued series of events, *continuatio et series rerum* (p. 5).
5. Both consuls were slain, *uterque consul occisus est* (p. 7).
6. He came against his will, *invitus venit*.
7. He was the first to see, *primus vidit* (p. 8).
8. The rest of the crowd, *reliqua multitudo*.
9. All men praise bravery, *omnes fortia laudant* (p. 9).
10. The fight at Cannæ, *pugna Cannensis*.
11. Another man's house, *aliena domus*.
12. I prefer the art of memory to that of forgetfulness, *memoriae artem quam oblivionis malo* (p. 12).
13. The army of Cæsar defeated that of Pompey, *Caesaris exercitus Pompeianos vicit*.
14. That [just mentioned] is a great argument, but this is a greater, that, &c., *hoc magnum est argumentum, illud autem majus, quod, etc.* (p. 13).
15. It is just three years, *tres anni ipsi sunt*.
16. The book you gave me, *liber quem mihi dedisti* (p. 15).
17. Cæsar the conqueror of Gaul, *Caesar qui Galliam vicit*.
18. A class, of which there is great lack, *cujus generis magna est paucitas*.
19. Those evils which we suffer with many seem to us lighter, *quae mala cum multis patimur ea nobis leviora videntur*.

20. There were as many opinions as men, *quot homines tot erant sententiae* (p. 16).
21. What can happen to any [one] man can happen to any man [whatever], *cuius potest accidere quod cuicumque potest*.
22. Each army was in sight of the other, *uterque utrique erat exercitus in conspectu* (p. 19).
23. The boy's name is Marcus, *puero nomen est Marco* (p. 26).
24. It is the part of wisdom, *est sapientis*.
25. In silence, *tacite* (or *silentio*), p. 30.
26. I esteem Plato very highly, but the truth more, *Platonem per-magni sed veritatem pluris aestimo*.
27. You have robbed me of my property, *bona mihi abstulisti*.
28. Much more rich than wise, *multo divitior quam sapientior*.
29. The more virtuously one lives the less he will injure others, *quanto quis vivit honestius tanto minus nocebit aliis*.
30. A means of guarding against troubles, *cautio incommodorum*.
31. Jealousy of the Senate, *invidia senatoria* (p. 35).
32. More learning than wisdom, *plus doctrinae quam sapientiae*.
33. You ought to have gone, *te ire oportuit*.
34. Within four days after this was done, the matter was reported to Chrysogonus in Sulla's camp at Volaterræ, *quadriduo quo haec gesta sunt res ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullae Volaterras defertur* (p. 41).
35. To fight on horseback, *ex equo pugnare* (p. 43).
36. He would often play with his children, *saepe cum pueris ludebat* (p. 46).
37. I begin to feel like dancing, *jam lubet saltare*.
38. The commander is relieved, *imperator succeditur* (p. 49).
39. Men do not gather grapes from thorns, *ex sentibus uvae non percipiuntur*.
40. Socrates was put to death by his fellow-citizens, *Socratem cives sui interfecerunt* (p. 50).
41. Crassus is not envied for his wealth, *Crasso divitiae non invidentur* (p. 51).
42. What is creation? *Quid est creare?* (p. 53).
43. It was reported that Cæsar's house had been attacked (or, An attack on Cæsar's house was reported), *oppugnatio Caesaris domus nuntiabatur* (p. 55).
44. In the following winter, *ea quae secuta est hieme* (p. 57).
45. Any evil is easily crushed at its birth, *omne malum nascens facile opprimitur* (p. 57).

46. Your being here is agreeable, *quod ades* (or, *te adesse*) *gratum est* (p. 60).
47. I dissuaded him from going, *ne irret dissuasi*.
48. I should like to go, *ire velim* (p. 63).
49. I could wish he were here, *vellem adesset*.
50. What was I to do? *Quid facerem?*
51. Cæsar was too merciful to punish his adversaries; *clementior erat-Cæsar quam ut inimicos puniret* (p. 71).
52. He was accused of treason against his country, *accusatus est quod patriam prodidisset* (p. 75).
53. I have yet to speak of the war against the pirates, *reliquum est ut de bello dicam piratico* (p. 72).
54. An inestimable value, *pretium majus quam ut aestimetur*.
55. To think that you should have fallen into such grief for me! *te in tantas aerumnas propter me incidisse!* (p. 83).
56. What! I interrupt you? *egone ut te interpelllem?*
57. I do not doubt that he will come, *non dubito quin venturus sit*.
58. Not to be tedious, *ne longus sim*.
59. It would befit us to mourn, *nos decebat lugere*.
60. I fear he will come, *vereor ne veniat*.
61. I fear he will not come, *vereor ut veniat*.
62. And besides, *accedit quod* (with indic.).
63. To utter many falsehoods, *multa mentiri*.
64. It is worth while, *operæ pretium est*.
65. He says he has not done it, *negat se fecisse*.
66. The many defeats they have sustained, *clades quas plurimas passi sunt*.
67. To have a prosperous voyage, *ex sententia navigare*.
68. Such is his self-command, *quæ est ejus continentia*; or, *quæ est continentia..*
69. So far as I know, *quod scio* (sciam).
70. I never heard him without admiration, *numquam eum audiui quin admirarer*.
71. I cannot but believe, *non possum quin credam*.
72. Nothing prevents your reading the book, *nihil obstat quominus librum legas*.
73. How many are there of you? *Quot estis?*
74. I made him retire, *effeci ut se reciperet*.
75. He deserves to be loved, *dignus est qui ametur*.
76. For many years he has been in my debt, *multi sunt anni cum in nostro aere est*.

77. I congratulate you on your influence with Cæsar, *gratulor tibi quod tantum apud Caesarem vales.*
78. He was accused of having betrayed the king, *accusatus est quod regem prodidisset.*
79. Many men admire poems without understanding them, *plurimi carmina mirantur neque ea intelligunt.*
80. Instead of reading he is playing ball, *pilam agit cum legere debeat.*
81. He makes it his object to serve the country, *id agit ut patriae inserviat.*
82. He is kind in allowing you to depart, *benignus est qui te proficisci patiatur.*
83. He is too strong to be subdued, *fortior est quam ut (quam qui) devinci possit.*
84. It was owing to you that I did not come, *per te stetit quominus venirem.*
85. To aim at a revolution, *novis rebus studere.*
86. To the great danger of the state, *cum summo rei publicae periculo.*
87. Love for Cicero, *amor Ciceronis*; Cicero's love of his brother, *Ciceronis amor fraternus* (or, *in fratrem*).
88. He spoke so that no one heard, *ita locutus est ut nemo audiret* (that no one might hear, *ne quis audiret*).
89. And no one heard, *nec quisquam audivit.*
90. One understands in this way, another in that, *alius alio modo intellegit.*
91. Both public and private buildings, both sacred and profane, *aedificia publica, privata, sacra, profana.*
92. We had reached the temple of Vesta, *ventum erat ad Vestae.*
93. To be brief, *quid multa? quid plura?*
94. I find great pleasure in doing this, *hoc gratissimum facio.*
95. I am far from being cruel, *procul abest quin saevus sim.*
96. He lost one of his eyes, *altero oculo captus est.*
97. You are the very one I was looking for, *te ipsum quærebam.*
98. Not only not of citizen's, but not even of Italian blood, *non modo civicae sed ne Italicae quidem stirpis.*
99. We are so far from admiring our own matters, that, &c., *tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut, etc.*
100. We seem to have advanced so far that even in fulness of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks, *tantum profecisse videmur ut a Graecis ne verborum quidem copia vinceremur.*

INDEX

TO THE POINTS CONSIDERED IN THE FOREGOING
INTRODUCTION.

I. CHOICE OF THE WORD.

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| <i>a.</i> Shade of meaning in the English word | 121 |
| <i>b.</i> Distinction expressed in Latin words | 121 |
| <i>c.</i> Distinction expressed in English words | 121 |
| <i>cc.</i> Opposite point of view | 121 |
| <i>d.</i> English phrase equivalent to Latin word | 121 |
| <i>dd.</i> Use of Technical words | 122 |
| <i>e.</i> No Latin equivalent to the English word | 122 |
| <i>f.</i> Concrete form of expression in Latin | 122 |
| <i>ff.</i> Use of abstract terms | 123 |
| <i>g.</i> Abstracts made concrete in the plural | 123 |
| <i>h.</i> Change of form in expressing Degree | 123 |
| <i>i.</i> Literal forms of expression | 123 |
| <i>ii.</i> Pairs of words (hendiadys) | 123 |
| <i>j.</i> Effete metaphors in English | 124 |
| <i>k.</i> Abstract noun used for adjective | 124 |
| <i>l.</i> Color to be given to the expression but once | 125 |
| <i>ll.</i> Words unnecessary to be expressed in Latin | 125 |
| <i>m.</i> Descriptive or allusive expressions | 125 |
| <i>n.</i> Phrase used for descriptive epithet | 126 |
| <i>o.</i> The main idea to be put in the leading clause | 126 |

II. FORM OF THE SENTENCE.

| | |
|--|-----|
| <i>p.</i> Periodic structure of the sentence | 126 |
| <i>q.</i> Use of Relatives as connectives, &c. | 127 |
| <i>qq.</i> Use of <i>autem</i> , <i>enim</i> , <i>quidem</i> , <i>vero</i> , <i>idem</i> | 127 |
| <i>r.</i> Connective omitted in coördinate clauses | 127 |
| <i>s.</i> Coördinate clause made subordinate | 127 |
| <i>t.</i> Use of Pronoun, to mark change of subject | 127 |
| <i>tt.</i> Repetition of Pronoun avoided by change of structure | 127 |
| <i>u.</i> The Noun to be kept in the same case | 128 |
| <i>v.</i> Main idea in the main clause | 128 |
| <i>vv.</i> Clauses to follow the natural or logical order | 129 |
| <i>w.</i> Use of Antithesis | 129 |
| <i>x.</i> Emphatic position of the Main Word | 129 |
| <i>y.</i> Change of Voice | 129 |
| <i>z.</i> Use of Idiomatic Particles | 130 |

EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION.

NOTE.—In the following Exercises, the *small letters* refer to the Notes on Words and Constructions given on pages 121-130; the *figures*, to the Notes at the foot of the page.

I. DEATH OF EPAMINONDAS.

WHEN Epaminondas^v had conquered the Lacedæmonians at Mantinea, and at the same time perceived that he was dying of a mortal wound, as soon as he could^u see,¹ he asked whether his shield were safe. When his weeping comrades answered that it was safe, he inquired whether the enemy were routed; and^q when he heard thatⁿ questionⁿ also answered according to his wish,² he ordered the spear, with which he was transfixed, to be drawn out. And so, drenched with blood, he expired in the midst of joy and victory.

¹ *dispicere* (a).

² *ut cupiebat*.

II. THE RING OF GYGES.

GYGES, a shepherd of the king, when the earth had parted asunder after heavy storms^d of rain, descended into the aperture, and perceived a brazen horse, in whose side there were doors. On opening these,^q he saw a body^s of unusual size, with a gold ring on its finger; this^q he drew^s off and put on his arm. Then he betook himself to the assembly of the shepherds. There, when he had turned round the bezel of the ring to the palm of his hand, he becameⁱ invisible,^o while^{qq} he saw every thing himself; when heⁿ turned the ring back to its place, he was once more visible.

III. CYRUS THE YOUNGER.

WHEN Lysander^v the Lacedæmonian had come to to Cyrus^u the Younger, at Sardis,¹ and had brought him presents from the allies, Cyrus^x treated^l him with great courtesy^r and kindness in other matters,¹ and in particular showed him a² piece of ground fenced in and carefully planted. Whilst^a Lysander was admiring the tallness^r of the trees, the straightness^s of their rows, and the fragrance of the perfumes which were wafted³ from the flowers, he remarked^j that he admired the ingenuity no less than^h the industry of the man who had measured^v out and designed all these things. And Cyrus answered him, "Well now,^z I made all the measurements you⁴ speak of; they are my^x rows, my designing; many even of these trees have been planted by my own hand." Then Lysander, beholding his kingly robe, the comeliness of his person, and his attire resplendent with much Persian gold and many jewels, said, "They rightly call you happy, Cyrus, since in you⁵ good fortune is combined⁶ with moral^d excellence."

¹ Lesson 17, *h.* Rem.² Lesson 9, 2. *a.*³ See Grammar, § 341. *c.*⁴ Lesson 7, 5.⁵ *tua.*⁶ Lesson 20, 4.

IV. XENOPHON'S SACRIFICE.

WHILST Xenophon^v was performing the customary sacrifice, he received the intelligence^j that the elder of his two sons, named Gryllus, had fallen in the battle at Mantinea. He did not, however, consider this a sufficient reason^o for omitting¹ the appointed^{dd} worship of the gods, but deemed it sufficient to lay aside his sacrificial^d crown. He then inquired^a how he had met^d

¹ Lit. "should be omitted on that account."

his death, and was told¹ that he had fallen while fighting with the utmost bravery. He therefore replaced the crown upon his head, calling the gods, to whom he was sacrificing, to witness that the pleasure he received^o at the valor of his son exceeded^o the grief occasioned¹ by his death.

¹ Lesson 22, 2.

V. THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS.

1. AN old woman, who was quite unknown to him, came to Tarquinius^x Superbus, the seventh and last king of Rome, bringing with her nine books, which she declared to be the oracles of the gods: she said she was willing to sell them. Tarquinius inquired^s the price; the woman^m asked an extravagant and enormous sum. The king^m laughed, thinking¹ the old woman in her dotage.^a Then she placed a brazier with fire in it before him, and burnt up three books out of the nine; and then inquired of the king whether he were ready to buy the remaining six at the same price. Tarquinius laughed still more, and said that beyond a doubt² the old woman was out of her senses.

2. The woman immediately, on the spot, consumed three more books, and once more quietly made the very same request of the king, namely, to purchase the remaining three at the same price. Tarquinius, struck by the strangeness of the affair, concluded that such persistency and boldness were not to be trifled¹ with; and purchased the three remaining books at just the same price that had been asked for all the nine. The woman then left^s the presence of Tarquinius, but³ report says was never seen afterwards. The three

¹ *quasi*.

² *plane*.

³ Lesson 22, 3. c.

books were deposited^p in the receptacle^{dd} for sacred things,⁴ and were called the *Sibylline Books*. Certain priests consulted them as they would an oracle, whenever the Romans considered that the gods should be consulted on behalf of the state.⁵

⁴ *sacrarium*.

⁵ *publice*.

VI. HANNIBAL AND ANTIOCHUS.

WHEN Hannibal on his expulsion^s from Carthage went to stay with Antiochus,^x king of Syria, the king passed before^l him in review^l immense bodies^d of troops, which he had equipped with the view of making war² against the Roman people. He showed him an army decorated with gold and silver ornaments; he also brought on the field^{ll} scythed chariots and elephants with towers, and cavalry glittering with their bits, housings, collars, and breast-trappings. And then the king, elated at the sight of an army so great in numbers and so splendidly equipped, turned to Hannibal and remarked,^l "Do you think this army can be matched with that of the Romans? and do you think all this will be enough for the Romans?" To this Hannibal, jeering at the cowardice and weakness of his soldiers, though so splendidly equipped, replied,^l "It is my beliefⁿ all this will be enough, quite enough, for the Romans, however greedy they may be."

Nothing,^q certainly, could have been said more smart or cutting: the king had put the question^s with respect^j to the number of the army, whether it would be a match for that^{ll} of the Romans; Hannibal's answer^s had reference to the booty the Romans^{ll} would acquire.^{ll}

¹ Lit. "showed to him in the field."

² Participle in *rus*.

VII. THE TALKING CROW.

AFTER the victory of Actium, amongst those¹ who came^u to congratulate Augustus^x there approached him^u a certain man, having with him a crow, which he had taught to say, *Hail, Cæsar, conqueror, emperor!* Cæsar, struck with the cleverness^r of the bird, bought it for twenty thousand sesterces. Being greeted in a like manner by a parrot, he ordered it to be purchased. He was^s amused in the same way with a magpie, and it also he bought. These instances^l induced^r a poor shoemaker to teach a crow a similar salutation. Often, when¹ wearied with his task, he^u would say to the bird, when¹ it did not give the required^u answer, "I have lost my time and my trouble." At length, however, the crow learned to speak the address. Then he brought the bird to Augustus. He, however, upon hearing the crow's greeting, remarked,^l "I have plenty of such saluters at home." Whereupon the crow added, very opportunely, "I have lost my time and my trouble." At this Augustus laughed,^s and ordered the bird to be bought at a still higher price^b than he had hitherto given for the others.

¹ Participles.

VIII. HANNIBAL IN THE ALPS. — *Arnold.*

DAY dawned;^p the main^u army broke up¹ from its camp,^x and began to enter the defile; while^{aa} the natives,^a finding^u their positions² occupied by the enemy, at first looked on quietly, and offered^l no disturbance^r to the march.^f But when they saw the long narrow line^f of the Carthaginian army^u winding^r along the steep mountain side, and the cavalry^l and

¹ With *moveo* (*i*, *y*).

² *arx* (*i*).

baggage-cattle struggling at every step,³ with the difficulties¹ of the road, the temptation¹ to plunder⁴ was too strong¹ to be resisted;⁵ and from many points of the mountain, above⁶ the road, they rushed down⁷ upon the Carthaginians. The confusion was terrible;¹ for⁸ the road or track was⁸ so narrow^k that the least crowd⁹ or disorder pushed^v the heavily loaded¹ baggage-cattle down the steep below;¹¹ and the horses, wounded by the barbarians' missiles, and plunging¹⁰ about wildly¹⁰ in their pain and terror, increased the mischief.¹¹

³ Relative with *insistere* (*i*). ⁴ Lesson 15, *a* (*f*). ⁵ Impersonal.

⁶ *imminens*. ⁷ Imperfect. ⁸ *quippe*. ⁹ With *siquid*.

¹⁰ *furo*.

¹¹ *strages* (*a*, *i*).

IX. THE EMBASSY OF PHILIP. — *Arnold*.

FORTUNE in another quarter¹ served the Romans no less^h effectually.¹ The^{9a} Macedonian ambassadors, after having^v concluded¹ their treaty with Hannibal at Tifata, made their way back into Bruttium in safety, and^p embarked to return¹¹ to Greece. But their ship was⁸ taken, off the Calabrian coast, by the Roman squadron on¹ that¹¹ station; and the ambassadors, with all their papers, were sent prisoners to Rome. A² vessel which had been of this company⁷ escaped the Romans,³ and informed⁴ the king what had happened. He was obliged, therefore, to send a second embassy to Hannibal, as the former treaty had never reached^v him; and although this second mission¹ went⁵ and returned⁵ safely,^c yet the loss of time was irreparable,¹ and^p nothing could be done till the following year.⁶

¹ Rel. clause (cf. Lesson 8, 3). ² *unus* (as opposed to the rest).

³ Lit. "out of the hands of," &c. (*i*). ⁴ *defero* (*dd*).

⁵ Participle.

⁶ Lit. "done this year."

X. HANNIBAL NEAR ROME.

1. THE next day, Hannibal, crossing the Anio, drew out all his forces in order of battle.^{ad} Nor did Flaccus and his consuls decline the contest. The troops on both sides having been drawn up to tryⁿ the chances of a¹ battle, in which the city of Rome was to be the conqueror's prize, a violent shower mingled with hail so disordered both the lines, that the troops, scarcely ableⁿ to hold their arms, retired into their camps, with less^h apprehension of the enemy than of any thing else. On the following day, also, a similar storm separated the armies marshalled on the same ground. After they had retired to their camps, an extraordinary calm and tranquillity arose. This circumstance was held providential² among the Carthaginians; and an expression^f of Hannibal's is said to have been heard, "That at one moment^l the inclination, at another the opportunity,³ of becoming master of Rome, was not allowed⁴ him."

2. Other contingencies^l also, the one important,¹ the other insignificant,¹ diminished his hopes. The important one was, that, while he was encamped⁵ under arms near the walls of the city, he heard that troops had marched out with colors flying,ⁿ as a reinforcement for Spain; while^{aa} the less significant circumstanceⁿ was that it was discovered, from one of his prisoners, that at this very time the very ground on which he was encamped had been sold, with no diminutionⁿ of price on that account.^l Indeed, it appeared so great an insult^e and indignity that a purchaser should have been discovered at Rome for

¹ See Lesson 7, 1. Note.² With *religio* (*dd*).³ *fortuna*.⁴ *dare* (*i*).⁵ *sedere* (*i*).

the very soil which he possessed and held as the prize^{ff} of war, that, calling instantly for a crier, he ordered that the silversmiths' shops, which then were ranged^j around the Roman Forum, should be put up for sale.^{dd}

XI. YOUNG SCIPIO.

1. AT Rome, after the recovery^{ff} of Capua, the attention¹ of the Senate and people was fixedⁱ upon Spain as much as^h upon Italy; and it was resolved^{dd} that the army there should be recruited,ⁱ and a general despatched.ⁱ It was not, however, so clear whom they should send, as that, since two great generals had fallen within thirty days, he who was to supply^{dd} their place should be chosen with extraordinary care. As some named one man, others another, it was at last determined that the people should hold an assembly to elect^{dd} a pro-consul for Spain; and the consuls proclaimed a day for the assembly. At first they had expected that those who believed themselves worthy of so important a command would give in^{dd} their names. As this^a expectation was defeated, their sorrow for² the disaster sustained was renewed, and also their regret for the generals lost.

2. Accordingly, the people sorrowfully, and almost at a loss what to decide upon,³ descended into the Campus Martius^{ll} on the day of the election; and, turning towards the magistrates, looked round upon the countenances of their leading men, who were⁴ anxiously gazing at each other, and murmured that their fortunes were so fallen, and such despair^{ff} was felt for the state, that no one ventured to accept the

¹ *cura*. ² Lesson 15, *a*. ³ *consilium* (*dd*). ⁴ Lesson 22, 3. *a*.

command in Spain ; when suddenly Publius Cornelius, son of that Publius who had fallen in Spain, then¹ about twenty-four years of age, declaring² himself a candidate,³ took his station on an eminence⁴ whence he could be seen. The eyes of the whole assembly were⁵ directed towards him, and by acclamations and tokens of favor⁶ they augured a happy and prosperous command.

XII. HANNIBAL'S EXILE.

1. HANNIBAL^x was^o the only man who^o perceived¹ that he was aimed at by the Romans ; and that peace was only allowed the Carthaginians on the understanding¹ that a remorseless war should be maintained² against himself alone. He therefore resolved to submit to the crisis and to his fate ; and, having prepared every thing for flight, he first publicly appeared³ in the forum on that day in order to avert suspicion, but,^p as soon as darkness fell,¹ departed in his out-of-doors⁴ dress, with two attendants ignorant of his design. Horses being in readiness^{ff} at the spot where they had been ordered,^y he passed^s through Byzacium by night, and arrived on the following day on the sea-coast, between Adolla and Thapsus, at a castle of his own. There^q a vessel prepared and manned with rowers received him. Thus did Hannibal leave Africa, pitying the fate of his country oftener^x than his own.

2. The same day he crossed into the isle of Cerina. Finding⁴ there several⁵ Phœnician merchant-ships⁴ in harbor, with their freights,⁶ and a concourse of people having flocked together to welcome him as

¹ *fallo*, with negative.

² *manere* (i).

³ *obversari* (s).

⁴ Lesson 22, 2.

⁵ Lesson 9, 2. a.

⁶ *merx* (i).

he⁷ disembarked from the vessel, he ordered that all who⁷ inquired should be informed^{cc} that he had been sent as ambassador to Tyre. Apprehensive, however, that one⁵ of their ships, sailing by night for Thapsus or Adrumetum, might announce that he had been seen at Cercina, he commanded a sacrifice to be prepared, and^a the captains of the vessels and the merchants to be invited; also giving orders^l that the sails, together with the yard-arms, should be brought together from the ships, that they might enjoy⁸ the shade — for it happened⁹ to be^v midsummer — while supping on the shore.

3. So far as circumstances^l and time permitted, the banquet was duly prepared¹⁰ and celebrated on that day,¹¹ and the feast was protracted with a profusion of wine to a late hour of night. Hannibal, as soon as he found an opportunity of escaping the notice of those who were in the harbor, unmoored his vessel. The rest, having at length arisen from their deep slumber, on the following day, full of the fumes^d of wine, spent several hours in carrying back and setting in order the tackle of their ships.

4. At Carthage, too, there was a concourse of the people, accustomed to frequent the house of Hannibal, at the vestibule of his mansion. As soon as it was generally known¹² that he was not to be found,¹³ a crowd of citizens,¹¹ in quest of the chief man in the state, flocked^l to the forum.^x Some spread a report that he had taken to flight, as¹⁴ was really¹¹ the case;^l others that he had been assassinated by the treachery of the Romans; and you might observe

⁷ Lesson 22, 3. a.

⁸ With *fio* (cc).

⁹ *forte*.

¹⁰ With noun in adverbial phrase (compare *p*).

¹¹ Lesson 15, a.

¹² *vulgari*.

¹³ *comparere* (cc).

¹⁴ *id quod*.

various countenances, as is natural¹¹ in a state agitated¹⁵ by the intrigues of partisans supporting different factions.

¹⁵ *discors*, making it more personal: lit. "of men supporting (*favere*) different (*alius alius*) parties and agitated," &c. (compare *i*).

XIII. THE TALE OF ATALANTA. — *Bacon*.

ATALANTA, who was exceeding fleet,¹ contended^x with Hippomenes in the course,^x on condition that, if Hippomenes won, he should espouse^{dd} her, or forfeit^l his life if he lost. The match was very unequal, for^p Atalanta had conquered^y numbers^l to their destruction.^o Hippomenes therefore had recourse^s to stratagem. He procured^s three golden apples, and purposely carried them with him. They started.^y Atalanta outstripped him soon; then Hippomenes bowled one of his¹¹ apples before her,¹ across the course, in order^l not only to make¹¹ her stoop, but to draw^y her out of the path. She, prompted by female curiosity,² and the beauty of the golden fruit,¹¹ starts from the course to take up the apple. Hippomenes, in the mean time, holds on his way, and^p steps before her; but she, by her natural¹¹ swiftness, soon fetches up her lost ground, and leaves him again behind. Hippomenes, however, by rightly timing⁸ his second and third throws,^{fr} at length won the race, not by his swiftness, but^r by his cunning.^x

¹ *eo consilio ut*.

² *studium (i)*.

³ *jactare ad tempus*.

XIV. ASSASSINATION OF CÆSAR. — *Plutarch*.

1. WHEN¹ Cæsar^x entered, the Senate rose to do him^{tt} honor,^{dd} and some of the party² of Brutus stood

¹ Lesson 22, 3. a.

² Lesson 15, c.

around his chair at the back, and others presented themselves before him, as if their purpose^r was to support the prayers of Tillius Cimber on behalf of his exiled brother; and they all joined in entreaty, following Cæsar as far as his seat. When he had taken his seat, and was rejecting their entreaties, and as they urged^s him still more strongly, began to show displeasure^r towards them individually, Tillius, taking hold of his toga with both hands, pulled it downward from the neck, which was the signal for the attack.¹¹ Casca was the first to strike^o him on the neck with his sword, a blow neither mortal nor severe; for,^a as was natural at the beginning^r of so bold a deed, he was confused, and^a Cæsar^m turning round seized^s the blade and held it fast.

2. And it happened^o that at the same moment^d he who was struck^m cried^o out in the Roman language, "You villain Casca, what are you doing?" and he who had given^m the blow cried^l out to his brother^l in Greek, "Brother, help!" Such being the beginning, those who were not privy to the conspiracy were prevented by consternation and horror at what was going on either from flying⁴ or going to aid, and they did not even venture to utter a word. And now^{qa} each of the conspirators bared^s his sword; and Cæsar being hemmed in all round, in whatsoever direction he turned meeting blows and swords aimed against his eyes and face, driven about like a wild beast, was caught in the hands of his enemies; for it was arranged that all of them should take a part in and taste of the deed^l of blood.¹

3. Accordingly also Brutus gave him one blow in the groin. It is said by some authorities, that he

³ Lesson 22, 3.

⁴ Lesson 31, 2. d.

defended himself against the rest, moving^y about his body hither and thither, and calling out, till he saw that Brutus had drawn his sword; when^b he pulled his toga over his face and offered no further resistance,^g having been driven either by chance or the conspirators to the base on which the statue of Pompey stood. And the base was drenched with blood, as if Pompey was directing the vengeance upon his enemy, who was stretched beneath his feet, and writhing^{je} under many wounds; for he is said to have received^y three and twenty wounds.¹¹ Many of the conspirators were wounded by one another, while they were aiming so many blows against one body.

^b *tum vero.*

XV. DEATH OF MARCUS ANTONIUS.

1. THE orator, Marcus Antonius, found a faithful friend in these dangerous times, but still he did not escape. This friend,^m though a poor man and of the lower class, received in his house one of the most illustriousⁿ of the Romans, and wishing to entertain him as well as he could, sent a slave to one of the neighboring wine-shops to get some wine. As the slave was more curious than usual in tasting^o it, and told the man to give^y him some better wine, the merchant asked what could be the reason¹¹ that he did not buy the new wine, as usual, and the ordinary wine,¹¹ but wanted some of good quality^r and high price.^r The slave replied in his simplicity,^r as he was speaking to an old acquaintance, that his master was entertaining Marcus Antonius, who was concealed at his house. The wine-dealer,^m a faithless and unprincipled wretch,ⁿ

as soon as the slave left him, hurried off to Marius, who was at supper, and having gained admission, told him he would betray Marcus Antonius to him.

2. On hearing¹ this,^a Marius is said to have uttered a loud shout, and to have clapped his hands with delight; and he was near^b getting up and going to the place himself, but his friends stopped^c him, and he despatched Annius with some soldiers with orders^d to bring him the head of Antonius immediately. On reaching³ the house, Annius waited^e at the door, and the soldiers mounting the stairs^f entered the room; but, on seeing Antonius, every man began to urge some of his companions, and push him forward to do the deed instead^g of himself. And so persuasive was the charm of his eloquence, when Antonius began to speak and plead for his life, that not a man of them could^h venture to lay hands on him or look him in the face, but they all bentⁱ their heads down and shed tears. As this^a caused^j some delay, Annius went up stairs,^k where he saw^l Antonius speaking, and the soldiers awed and completely softened by his eloquence: on which^m he abused them, and running up to Antonius, cut off his head with his own hand.

¹ Lesson 22, 3. *b*.

² Lesson 31, 2. *b*, *d*.

³ Lesson 22, 2.

XVI. DESTRUCTION OF CARTHAGE.

1. BUT when, yielding^j to famine, the most resolute of them set fire to the temple, Hasdrubal could not endure to face^k death; alone^{aa} he ran^x forth to the victor, and falling upon his neck pleaded for his life. It was granted;^j but when his wife, who with her children was amongst the rest on the roof of the temple, saw him at the feet of Scipio, her proud^{ll}

heart swelled^a at this disgrace brought on her beloved perishing home,¹ and with bitter words bidding her husband be careful to save his life, she plunged first her sons and then herself into the flames. The struggle was^a at an end. The^p joy in the camp^w and at Rome was boundless:^z the noblest^p of the Romans alone were^a in secret ashamed of the most recent achievement of the nation.

2. The senate ordered the general to level the city of Carthage and the suburb of Magalia with the ground, and to do the same with all the places which had held by Carthage to the last; and thereafter to pass the plough over the site of Carthage, so as to put an end in legal form^{dd} to the existence^{ff} of the city, and to curse the soil and site for ever, that neither house nor corn-field might ever reappear^l on the spot. The^a command was punctually obeyed. The ruins burned for seventeen days. Recently, when the remains of the city wall were excavated, they were found to be covered with a layer^{ll} of ashes from four to five feet deep, filled with half-charred pieces of wood,^d fragments of iron, and projectiles. Where^{qq} the industrious Phœnicians had bustled and trafficked for five hundred years, Roman slaves henceforth pastured the herds of their distant masters.

XVII. XENOPHON AT THE SEA.

1. THEY^a had crossed^l the plain to the foot of the hills in the dark, during the last watch of the night, and^p found the passes^z unguarded. But^{qq} the people^l fled from the villages at their approach, and though the Greeks at first spared^v their property,^l could not

¹ *pervenire* with *trans*.

^z Insert *quidem* (*qq*).

be induced to listen to any pacific¹ overtures.¹ But having recovered from their first surprise, and^a collected a part of their forces, they fell upon the rear of the Greeks, and with their missiles made some slaughter among the last³ troops¹¹ which issued in the dusk of the evening¹¹ from the long and narrow defile. In the night¹¹ the watch¹¹-fires of the Carduchians were seen blazing⁴ on the peaks of the surrounding⁵ hills; signals³ which warned the Greeks that they might expect⁶ to be attacked by the collected forces of their tribes.

2. On the fifth day, as⁷ the army was ascending Mount Theche, a lofty ridge distinguished¹ by the name of the Sacred Mountain, Xenophon and the rear-guard observed a stoppage¹¹ and an unusual clamor in the foremost ranks,¹¹ which had reached the summit, and they⁸ supposed at first that they saw⁷ an enemy before them. But when Xenophon rode up to ascertain the cause, the first shouts that struck⁹ his ear were, *The sea, the sea!* The glad sound ran quickly till it reached the hindmost, and all pressed forward to enjoy the cheering spectacle. The Euxine¹¹ spread¹¹ its waters before their eyes; waters which rolled on to the shores of Greece, and which washed the walls of many Greek cities on the nearest coast of Asia.

¹ In relative clause.⁴ Infinitive.⁵ Lesson 8, 3.⁶ Part in *duo* (*y*).⁷ Lesson 25, 2. *b*.⁸ *adeo ut* (*p*).

XVIII. VERCINGETORIX. — *Merivale*.

VERCINGETORIX, with all the gallant gayety¹¹ of his nation,¹ clad^a himself in his most splendid armour, and mounted his noblest charger. Cæsar¹¹ had drawn^a up his troops, and had seated himself to receive his

¹ *ut fere Galli* (*f*).

captives. The Gaul^m causedⁿ the gates of his encampment to be thrown^a wide, and galloped forth into the open space, in the attitude of a warrior charging.² Having approached close to the proconsul's chair, he dexterously wheeled round, and again returning to the same spot, sprang to the ground, and laid his arms at the feet of the conqueror. The army^p was^a touched with a sense^d of admiration akin to compassion, but Cæsar himself remained coldⁱ and unmoved.

² With *arma*.

XIX. A STORY OF WOLVES.

WE had¹ one dangerous place to pass, and our guide told us, if there were more wolves in the country,^j we should find them there;^q and^{qa} this was a small plain surrounded with woods on every side. It was within half an hour of sunset when^o we entered the wood, and a little after sunset when^o we came into the plain: we met with nothing in the first wood, except that we saw five great wolves cross the road, full speed one after another, as if they had been in chase of some prey and had it in view: they took no notice^r of us, and were gone out of sight in a few moments. Upon this, our guide, who, by the way,² was but⁸ a faint-hearted fellow, bid us keep in a ready posture,ⁱ for he believed there were more wolves a-coming. We kept our arms ready and our eyes about us; but we saw no more wolves till we came through that wood, which was near half a league, and entered the plain. As soon as we came into the plain we had

¹ Lesson 20, 2. c.

² *quidem*.

⁸ *sane*.

occasion¹ enough to look about us: the first object we met with was a dead horse which the wolves had killed, and at least a dozen of them at work picking his bones.

XX. DEATH OF SOCRATES. — *Plato.*

1. WHEN he had thus spoken, Socrates arose and went into another room that he might wash himself, and Crito followed^s him;¹¹ but¹² he ordered^s us to wait for him.¹¹ We waited therefore accordingly, discoursing over and reviewing among ourselves what had been said; and sometimes speaking about his death, how great a calamity it would be to us; and sincerely thinking that we, like those who are deprived of their fathers, should pass^y the rest of our life in the condition of orphans.^d But when he had washed himself, his sons were brought to him (for he had two little ones, and one older), and the women belonging to his family¹¹ likewise came in to him; but^a when he had spoken to them before Crito, and had left them such injunctions^s as he thought^y proper,¹¹ he ordered^y the boys and women to depart,^s and he himself returned to us.

2. And it was now near the setting of the sun; for he had been away in the inner room for a long time. But when he came in from bathing¹ he sat down, and did not² speak much afterwards; for then the servant of the Eleven^{ad} came in, and standing near him, said, "I do not perceive that in you, Socrates, which I have taken¹ notice¹ of in others: I mean,¹¹ that they are angry with me and curse me, when being compelled by the magistrates I announce to them that they must

¹ *lotus.*

² *nec.*

drink⁷ the poison. But, on the contrary,⁸ I have found you to the present time^d to be¹¹ the most generous, mild, and best of all the men that ever came into this place; and therefore I am well convinced that you are not angry with me, but with the authors⁴ of your present condition, for you know who they are. Now therefore, for you know what I came to tell you, farewell; and endeavor to bear this necessity as easily as possible."^d

3. At the same time bursting into tears, and turning himself away, he departed. But Socrates, looking after him, said, "And thou, too, farewell; and we shall take care¹¹ to act as you advise." And at the same time, turning to us, "How courteous," he said, "is the behavior^f of that man! During the whole time of my abode^f here, he has visited me, and often conversed with me, and proved himself to be the best of men; and now how generously he weeps on my account! But² let us obey him, Crito, and let some one bring the poison if it is bruised; and, if not, let the man whose business¹¹ it is bruise it."

4. "But, Socrates," said Crito, "I think that the sun still hangs¹ over the mountains, and is not set yet.² And at the same time I have known others who^o have drunk the poison very late after it was announced to them; who⁵ have supped and drunk abundantly. Therefore do not be in such haste, for there is yet time enough." Socrates replied,¹¹ "Such⁶ men, Crito, act fitly in the manner which you have described, for they think to derive some advantage^f from so doing;¹¹ and I also with propriety shall not act in this manner.¹¹ For I do not think I shall gain any thing by drinking

² *quod contra.*

⁴ Rel. clause (Lesson 8, 3).

⁵ Participle.

⁶ *isti.*

it later, except becoming⁷ ridiculous to myself through desiring to live, and being sparing of life, when nothing of it any longer⁸ remains. Go therefore," said he, "be persuaded,⁹ and comply with my request."¹¹

5. Then Crito, hearing⁵ this,⁹ gave a sign to the boy that stood near him; and the boy^m departing, and having stayed for some time, came back with the person that was to administer^l the poison, who brought it pounded in a cup. And Socrates, looking at the man, said, "Well,⁹ my friend, as you are knowing in these matters, what is¹⁰ to be done?" "Nothing," he said, "but¹¹ after you have drunk it to walk about, until a heaviness comes on in your legs, and then to lie down: this is the manner in which you have^o to act." And at the same time he extended the cup to Socrates. And Socrates taking it — and, indeed, with great cheerfulness, neither trembling nor turning color, but as his manner^{ff} was, looking sternly under his brows at the man — "What say you," he said, "to making^o a libation^x from this? may I do it or not?"

6. "We can only bruise as much, Socrates," he replied,¹¹ "as we think sufficient for the purpose." "I understand you," he said, "but² it is both lawful and proper to pray to the gods that my departure from hence to another world may be prosperous: which I entreat them to grant may be the case."¹ And so saying, he stopped and drank the poison very readily and pleasantly. And thus far the greater part of us were tolerably¹² well able to refrain from weeping;¹³ but when we saw him drinking, and that he had drunk it, we could no longer restrain our tears. And from me,

⁷ With *ut*.⁸ *credere*.⁹ *quid est*.¹⁰ *oportet*.¹¹ *quam ut*.¹² *satis*.¹³ Lesson 31, 2. *d*.

in spite of my efforts,⁴ they flowed, and that not drop by drop; so that wrapping⁷ myself in my mantle, I bewailed, not indeed for his misfortune, but for my own, considering what a companion I should be deprived of.

XXI. HANNIBAL IN THE APENNINES.

So furious a tempest attacked him¹ (while) crossing^x the Apennines, that it almost surpassed the horrors of the Alps. The rain and wind together² being³ driven directly⁴ against their faces, they first halted, because^v either they were obliged to drop their arms, or, if⁵ they struggled against the storm, they were whirled round by the hurricane, and⁵ dashed upon the ground:¹¹ afterwards, as⁶ it took away¹ their breath, and did not allow them to respire, they sat down for a short time with their backs⁷ to the wind. Then, indeed, the sky resounded⁸ with the loudest thunder,⁹ and lightnings¹⁰ flashed amid the terrific peals: deafened¹¹ and blinded, they all became insensible¹² with fear. At last, the rain having spent¹ itself, and the violence of the wind having been redoubled¹³ upon that account, it was held requisite to pitch their camp on the very spot whereon they had been overtaken by the storm.¹¹ But this was like¹⁴ a fresh commencement of their toils. For they could neither spread their canvas,¹ nor fix their poles:¹ nor would any thing that had been fixed remain, the wind tearing every thing to shreds¹⁵ and hurrying it away; and soon after, when the water which⁵ had been raised

¹ Hannibal. ² *mixtus* (*i*). ³ Lesson 22, 2. ⁴ *ipse* (*i*).

⁵ Lesson 22, 3. *a*. ⁶ *cum*. ⁷ *aversus* (*i*, *y*). ⁸ Infinitive.

⁹ *sonus* (*i*). ¹⁰ *ignis*. ¹¹ *captus*, with nouns. ¹² With *torpere*.

¹³ *magis accensus*. ¹⁴ *velut*. ¹⁵ By prep. in compos.

aloft by the gale, had been frozen on the icy summits of the mountains, it^v poured down such a torrent^l of snowy hail, that the soldiers, throwing every thing away, fell down upon their faces,¹⁵ rather smothered¹⁶ than covered by their clothes. And such an intensity¹ of cold succeeded, that, whenever any one endeavored to raise and lift himself up from this miserable prostrate mass¹⁷ of men and cattle, he was long unable, because, his sinews stiffening with the cold, he was hardly capable^j of bending his joints.

¹⁶ *obruere.*

¹⁷ *strages.*

XXII. THE GAULS AT ROME.

THE Romans, seeing¹ from the citadel the city full of the enemy, some new disaster continually arising on every² side, were unable not only to realize^f it,¹¹ but even to command⁸ their senses.⁴ Wherever the shouts of the foe, the lamentations of women and children, the crackling of fire, and the crash of falling roofs, called⁵ their attention,¹¹ terrified at every sound,¹ they turned their thoughts, faces, and eyes, as if stationed by fortune to be spectators⁶ of the ruin⁷ of their country, and left to protect⁷ no part of their property,¹ except their own persons :¹ so much more⁸ to be pitied than others that have ever been besieged, inasmuch as⁹ they were at once invested and⁸ shut out from their country, beholding all their effects^j in the power of their enemies. Nor was the night which⁹ succeeded¹⁰ a day so miserably spent more tranquil :^x day-

¹ Lesson 22, 2.

² *alius atque alius* ; so as to present the actual picture more vividly (cf. *i*).

³ *constare.* ⁴ Express by the organs of sense (*f*). ⁵ *avertere.*

⁶ *spectaculum* (*cc*). ⁷ *vindex* (*y*). ⁸ *ante.* ⁹ Lesson 28, 2. *d.*

¹⁰ *excipere* (cf. *k*).

light then followed a restless night: nor was there any moment which^o was free from¹¹ the spectacle of some ever¹² new disaster. Nevertheless, burdened and overwhelmed by so many evils, they abated¹³ not^x their courage, determined,¹⁴ although they had beheld all things levelled by conflagration and ruin, to defend, by their valor, the hill which they occupied, ill-provided and narrow as it was,¹⁵ yet the refuge¹⁶ of freedom. And at last, as the same things happened every day, they had abstracted their thoughts, as if^v inured to calamities,¹ from all sense of their misfortunes; gazing only upon the arms, and the swords in their hands, as the sole remnants of their hopes.

¹¹ *cessare* (a), to give a more intense personal character than the ordinary words.

¹² *semper*.

¹³ *flectere*.

¹⁴ *quin* (I).

¹⁵ The phrase may be omitted (cf. II), or with *quavis*. ¹⁶ *relictus* (cc).

XXIII. MURDER OF MARCELLUS.

I. THE day following, as I was purposing¹ to set out from Athens, his friend Posthumius came to me about four² in the morning, and informed me Marcellus had been stabbed³ the night before by Magius Cilo, whilst they were sitting¹¹ together after supper; that he had received two wounds from a dagger,¹ one of which was¹¹ in his breast, and the other under his ear; but that neither of them, he hoped, was mortal.⁴ He added,⁵ that Magius, after having committed this barbarous action,¹¹ immediately killed himself; and that Marcellus had despatched^v him in order to give me this account, and likewise to desire that I would direct my physicians to attend¹¹ him. This I instantly did;

¹ *in animo habere*.

² Lesson 17, c.

³ *ferire, pugione icere*.

⁴ Lit. "hoped he could live" (cc, i).

⁵ Lesson 30, i. c (II).

and followed them myself as soon¹ as it was light. But when I had almost reached^{cc} Piræus, I met^{cc} a servant of Acidanus with a note to acquaint me that our friend^m expired a little before day-break. Thus did the noble Marcellus^m unworthily fall⁶ by the hand of a villanous assassin;¹ and he whose life his very enemies had spared, in reverence¹ to his illustrious virtues,⁷ met^v with an executioner at last in his own friend!^v

2. However, I proceeded to his pavilion: where^r I found only two of his freedmen and a few slaves; the rest, I was told,^v having fled in apprehension of the consequences¹¹ in which they might be involved¹ by this murder⁸ of their master. I was obliged to place the body⁹ of Marcellus in the same sedan that brought^v me, and to make¹⁰ my chair-men carry it into Athens: where I paid him all the funeral honors that city could supply;¹ which indeed were not inconsiderable. But I could not prevail¹¹ with the Athenians to suffer¹² him to be buried within their walls; a privilege,¹ they assured⁵ me, which their religious ordinances would by no means admit. They granted me, however, what was the next honor,¹¹ and which they had never permitted to any stranger before: they allowed¹¹ me to deposit his ashes in any of the Gymnasia I should think proper. Accordingly I fixed upon a spot belonging to the Academy, one of the noblest colleges¹³ in the whole world. In this place I caused a funeral pile to be erected, and afterwards persuaded the Athenians to raise^{dd} a marble monument to his memory,^d at the public expense.^{dd} Thus have I paid to my relation

⁶ *acerbissima morte afficere (i).*

⁷ *dignitas.*

⁸ Clause with *quod*.

⁹ Simply *is*.

¹⁰ With instrum. abl. (*j*).

¹¹ *impetrare.*

¹² *locum dare.*

¹³ *gymnasium.*

and colleague,¹⁴ both during his life and after his death, every friendly office he had a right to expect¹⁵ from me. Farewell.

¹⁴ Express by *pro* with abstract noun (*cc*).

¹⁵ With simple possessive pronoun (*i*).

XXIV. STORY OF CINCINNATUS. — *Arnold*.

1. THEN the Master^{dd} of the people and the Master of the horse went together into the forum, and bade every man to shut^y up his booth, and stopped^{dd} all causes at law,^{dd} and ordered that every¹ man who was of an age to go^{dd} out to battle should be ready in the Field of Mars^d before sunset, and^s should have^{ll} with him victuals for five days, and twelve stakes; and the older men dressed the victuals for the soldiers, whilst the soldiers^m went about everywhere² to get their stakes; and they cut them where they would without³ any hindrance.^{ff} So the army was ready in the Field of Mars at the time⁴ appointed, and they set forth from the city, and made such haste,^{ff} that ere the night was half spent^{ll} they came to Algidus; and when they perceived that they were near the enemy, they made a halt.^{dd}

2. Then Lucius rode on and saw how the camp of the enemy^{ll} lay⁶; and he ordered his soldiers to throw down all^{ll} their baggage into one place,^{ll} but to keep each man his arms and his twelve stakes. Then they set out again in their order of march as⁶ they had come from Rome, and they spread themselves round the camp of the enemy on every side. When this was done, upon a signal given they raised a great shout, and directly every man began to dig a ditch just where

¹ Indef. Rel.

² *dis-* in composition.

³ Lesson 23, 2. *c*.

⁴ *ad edictum*.

⁵ With *situs*.

⁶ Lesson 8, 7.

he stood, and to set in his stakes. The shout rang through the camp of the enemy, and filled them with fear; and it sounded even to the camp of the Romans who were shut up in the valley, and the consul's men said one to another, "Rescue is⁷ surely at hand, for that is the shout of the Romans."⁸

⁷ Lesson 30.

⁸ Use *civis*, for facility in making an adjective.

XXV. PRINCELY GENEROSITY. — *Feltham*.

DIOGENES asked¹ Plato^x for a glass of wine, and^a he presently sent himⁿ a gallon. When next Diogenes^x met him, he said to him: "I asked you how many were two and two? and you have answered, twenty." There are some of so noble a disposition, that, like trees of² ripe fruit, by degrees they drop away all that they have; they would³ even outdo the demands of all their friends, and would give as if they were gods, that could not be exhausted; they look not so much either at the merit of others, or their own ability,⁴ as the satisfactionⁿ of themselves from their own bounty. I find not a higher genius this way,⁵ than glowed^j in the victorious^m Alexander. He warred as if he coveted all things, and gave away as if he cared for nothing. You would think he did not conquer for himself, but his friends; and that he took, only that he might have wherewith to give; so that one might well⁶ conclude the world itself was too little⁷ for either his ambition or his bounty. When Perillus begged that he would be pleased to give him a portion for his daughters, he immediately commanded him fifty talents. The modest beggar^m told

¹ Lesson 22, 3. a.

² *onustus*.

³ *volo*.

⁴ *copiae*.

⁵ Lit. "no greater example in this kind."

⁶ *facile*.

⁷ *parum sufficere*.

him ten would be enough. To which the prince^m replied: "Though they might be enough for him to receive, yet they were not enough for himself to bestow."

XXVI. DEFEAT OF VARUS. — *Creasy.*

1. FATIGUE and discouragement now beganⁿ to betray^l themselves in the Roman ranks. Their line became less steady; baggage-wagons were abandoned from the impossibilityⁿ of forcing them along; and, as this happened, many soldiers left^l their ranks and crowded^l round the wagons to secure the most valuable portionsⁿ of their property; each busy about his own affairs,ⁿ and purposely slow in hearing the word^d of command from² his officers. Arminius now gave the signal for a general^l attack.ⁿ The fierce shouts of the Germans^x pealed^l through the gloomⁿ of the forests, and in thronging^l multitudes^l they assailed the flanks of the invaders,^m pouring in clouds of darts on the encumbered legionaries, as³ they struggled up the glens or floundered^l in the morasses.

2. Arminius, with a chosen band of personal retainers round him, cheered on his countrymenⁿ by voice and example. Heⁿ and his menⁿ aimed their weaponsⁿ particularly at the horses of the Roman^m cavalry. The wounded animals,^a slipping about in the mire and their own blood, threw their riders, and plunged among the ranks of the legions, disordering^o all round them.

3. The bulk of the Roman army fought steadily and stubbornly, frequently repelling the masses of the assailants, but gradually losing the compactnessⁿ of

¹ Lesson 22, 3. *b.*

² Lesson 15, *a.*

³ Lesson 22, 2.

their array. At last, in a series¹ of desperate attacks the column was pierced through and through, two of the eagles captured,² and the Roman host, which on the yester morning had marched forth in such pride³ and might, now broken up into confused⁴ fragments,⁵ either⁶ fell fighting beneath the overpowering numbers of the enemy or⁷ perished in the swamps and woods in unavailing efforts⁸ at flight.

⁴ *partim*.

XXVII. SIEGE OF SYRACUSE. — *Arnold*.

MARCELLUS brought¹ up his ships against the sea-wall² of Achradina, and endeavored³ by a constant discharge⁴ of stones and arrows to clear the walls of their defenders, so that his men might apply their ladders, and mount to the assault. These ladders rested⁵ on two ships, lashed⁶ together broadside to broadside,⁷ and⁸ worked as one by their outside oars. But Archimedes had supplied the ramparts with an artillery so powerful,⁹ that it overwhelmed¹⁰ the Romans before they could get within the range¹¹ which their missiles¹² could reach:¹³ and¹⁴ when they came closer, they found¹⁵ that all the lower part of the wall was loopholed¹⁶; and their men were struck¹⁷ down with fatal aim¹⁸ by an enemy whom they could not see, and who shot¹⁹ his arrows²⁰ in perfect security.²¹ If they still persevered, and attempted²² to fix their ladders, on a sudden enormous stones or huge masses²³ of lead were dropped upon them, by which their ladders were crushed to pieces, and their ships were almost sunk. At other times, machines like cranes were

¹ Lesson 22, 3. *b*.

² *jungere*.

³ Result-clause with *applicare*.

⁴ *teli conjectus*.

⁵ Lit. "aimed at from a hidden [place]."

⁶ *pondus*.

thrust^a out over the wall; and the end^u of the lever, with^a an iron grapple affixed to it,^a was^p lowered upon the ships. As soon as the grapple^a had taken hold, the other end of the lever was lowered^a by heavy weights, and the ship raised^a out of the water, till^u it was made^v almost to stand upon its stern; then the grapple was suddenly let go, and the ship dropped^v into the sea with a violence which either upset^v it, or filled^v it with water. With equal^h power was the assault upon the land side^u repelled, till Marcellus in despair^{ff} put^v a stop^{ff} to his attacks; and it was resolved merely to blockade the town, and to wait for the effect of famine upon the crowded populationⁱ within.^u

¹ *affligo* (*y*).

XXVIII. BATTLE OF METAURUS. — *Arnold*.

1. FROM the momentⁱ that Nero's march^{ff} from the south^u had been heard^{cc} of at Rome,¹ intenseⁱ anxiety possessed the whole city. Every day the senate sat^{dd} from sunrise^{ff} to sunset; and not a senator was absent: every^u day the forum was crowded from morning^u till evening, as each hour might bring some great tidings;^u and every man² wished to be among the first to hear^o them. A doubtful rumor arose,^j that a great battle had been fought,^u and a great victoryⁱ won³ only two days before: two horsemen of Narnia had ridden^u off from the field to carry the news to their home; it^{qq} had been heard and published in the camp of the reserve⁴ army, which was lying at Narnia to cover the approach^u to Rome. But men dared not lightly believe what they so much wished to be true; and how, they

¹ Lesson 17, *h*.

² *pro se quisque* (*h*).

³ Compress the two clauses, making *battle* a modifier.

⁴ *in subsidiis*.

said,ⁿ could a battle fought^l in the extremityⁿ of Umbria be heard of only two days after at Rome? Soon, however, it was known that a letter had arrived^l from L. Manlius Acidinus himself, who commanded the army at Narnia: the horsemen had certainly arrived there from the field of battle, and brought tidingsⁿ of a glorious victory.ⁿ The letter was read first in the senate, and then in the forum^{dd} from the rostra;^{dd} but some still refused^j to believe:⁵ fugitives from a battle-field might carry idle tales of victory to hide their own shame; till the account came directly from the consuls, it was^o rash to credit it.

2. At last, wordⁿ was brought that officers⁶ of high rank in the consul's army were on their wayⁿ to Rome; that they bore^e a despatch from Livius^m and Nero. Then the whole city poured^v out of the walls to meet them, eager to anticipate the moment^l which was to confirm all their hopes. For two miles, as far as the Milvian bridge over the Tiber, the crowd formed an uninterrupted mass;^l and when the officers appeared, they could scarcely make their way to the city,ⁿ the^p multitude thronging^o around them, and overwhelming^j them and their attendants with eager questions.ⁿ As each man learned the joyful^k answers,ⁿ he made haste to tell^o themⁿ to others: "The enemy's army is destroyed;^o the general slain;^o our⁷ own legions and both the consuls are safe." So the crowdⁿ re-entered the city; and the three officers, all men of noble names,ⁿ L. Veturius Philo, P. Licinius Varus, and Q. Metellus, still followed^v by the throngingⁿ multitude, at last reached the senate-house.

⁵ With *fides*.

⁶ It is more strictly Latin to name the office (*legati*); but here it may be paraphrased.

⁷ *Romanas*; on account of indir. discourse.

3. The people pressed after¹ them into the senate-house itself: but even at such a moment¹ the senate forgot not its accustomed order;⁸ the crowd was⁸ forced back; and the consul's despatch was first read to the senators alone. Immediately afterwards the officers came out into the forum: there L. Veturius again read the despatch; and, as its contents¹¹ were short, he himself related the particulars¹ of what he had seen⁷ and done. The interest^{co} of his hearers grew more intense with every word;⁹ till at last the whole multitude¹¹ broke^{co} out in a universal¹¹ cheer, and then rushed⁷ from the forum in all directions to carry the news to their wives and children at home, or¹⁰ ran to the temples to pour^{dd} out their gratitude to the gods. The senate ordered a thanksgiving of three days; the prætor announced^{dd} it in the forum; and for three days every temple was crowded; and the Roman wives and mothers,^{dd} in their gayest dresses, took¹¹ their children with them, and⁸ poured forth their thanks to all the gods for this great deliverance.^f

⁸ *mos et instituta.*

⁹ *magis magisque.*

¹⁰ *alii . . . alii.*

XXIX. INUNDATIONS OF THE TIBER. — *Gibbon.*

1. FROM her situation,¹ Rome¹¹ is exposed to the danger¹¹ of frequent inundations. Without⁸ excepting^h the Tiber, the rivers^w that descend¹ from either side of the Apennines have^{iz} a short and irregular course: a^p shallow stream¹ in the summer heats; an^p irregular torrent,¹ when it is swollen in the spring or winter, by the fall of the rain, or the melting^f of the snows. When⁸ the current is repelled from the sea by adverse²

¹ This clause requires a verb in Latin to express precisely the picture alluded to (cf. *h*).

² Lesson 22, 3. *b*.

winds, when the ordinary bed is inadequate^h to the height of the waters, they rise above the banks, and overspread, without limit or control, the plains and cities of the adjacent country. Soon^h after the triumph^f of the first Punic war, the Tiber was increased by unusual rains; and^p the inundation, surpassing all former measure-of-time-and-place,³ destroyed^b all the buildings that were situate^j below the hills of Rome. According to the varietyⁱ of the ground, the same^a mischief^d was produced^v by different means; and the edifices were either swept^v away by the sudden impulse,⁴ or dissolved^v and undermined by the long continuance⁵ of the flood.

2. Under the reignⁿ of Augustus, the same calamity was renewed; the lawless⁶ river overturned the palaces and temples onⁱ its banks; and,^a after⁷ the labors of the emperor in cleansing and widening the bed, that was encumbered with ruins, the⁷ vigilance^j of his successors was exercised by similar dangers and designs.⁸ The project of diverting into new channels the Tiber itself, or some of the dependentⁱ streams, was long opposed by superstition and by local⁹ interests;^{cc} nor did the use compensateⁱ the toil and cost of the tardy and imperfect execution.^f The^a servitude¹⁰ of rivers is the noblest and most important victory which man has obtained over the licentiousness of nature; and if^a such were the ravages¹¹ of the Tiber under a firm and

³ By *memoria*.

⁴ Insert "the river," as the actual agent (*h*).

⁵ Insert "stagnant water," as the actual agent (*h*).

⁶ Personify more directly: "spurning the curb."

⁷ Co-ordinate clauses with *et* . . . *et* (compare *h*).

⁸ Lit. "as much care as possible was taken against a similar danger."

⁹ *privatus*.

¹⁰ Divide the clause for greater precision: "as in other . . . so," &c. (see *dd, ff*).

¹¹ Make precise with a verb, and append the result in an adverbial phrase.

active government,^f what could oppose,⁷ or who can enumerate, the injuries^b of¹² the city after the fall of the Western empire? A remedy^f was produced⁷ by the evil itself: the accumulation of rubbish and the earth that has been washed down from the hills is supposed⁷ to have elevated the plain of Rome, fourteen or fifteen feet perhaps, above the ancient level; and the modern¹³ city is less accessible¹⁴ to the attacks of the river.

¹² Lesson 15, a. ¹³ With adverb (*e*). ¹⁴ Lit. "sufficiently safe" (*cc*).

XXX. FIRST ACTING AT ROME.

I. THE pestilence continuing during both this and the following year, in which¹ Caius Sulpicius Pæticus and Caius Licinius Stolo were consuls, nothing memorable¹ was transacted; only² that, for the purpose of soliciting² the favor^b of the gods, the lectisternium was performed¹ the third time since the building of the city. But as the disorder received¹ no alleviation,^f either from human wisdom^g or divine aid, the strength^d of the people's minds became^g almost overpowered by superstition, and^p it is said that, on this occasion,^h among other devices^d for appeasing the wrath of heaven, scenic plays were introduced,³ a new thing to a warlike people; for hitherto there had been only the shows of the circus. However, this kind¹ of performance¹ was, as in general all beginnings are, but a trifling matter, and even that⁴ borrowed¹ from abroad.

2. Actors were^g sent for from Etruria, who,^o though without any poetical language,^d or any gestures correspondent^g to such language, yet regulating⁵ their

¹ Lesson 22, 3. *b*.

² *exposcere*

³ *instituere*.

⁴ *is ipse*.

⁵ *imitari* (with relative).

motions by⁶ the measures of the music,⁷ exhibited,^{da} in the Tuscan manner, something⁸ far from^h ungraceful. The younger citizens¹¹ soon began to imitate^x these; throwing out, at the same time, among each other, ludicrous expressions¹ in coarse verses, and with^r gestures adapted^{cc} to the words: this kind of performance^l then being^r received with approbation,¹¹ in the course^l of frequent practice gained much improvement.⁹ The native performers were called¹⁰ *Histriones*, from¹¹ the Tuscan word *Hister*, signifying a player; and^a they did not, as formerly, pronounce^l in dialogue,¹³ without regard to order,¹³ verses like the Fescennine, artless¹⁴ and unpolished, but represented comic¹¹ medleys, composed¹⁵ in regular¹¹ metre, with the several¹⁶ parts of the performance properly adjusted to the music; the delivery of the words and the gesticulation being performed in concert with the music.

3. Several years after this,¹¹ Livius, who was the first that ventured to lay aside¹⁷ medleys, and to weave a story into a regular¹¹ plot, being also, as all were at that time, the actor of his own pieces; and, having^o broken his voice by¹⁸ being obliged to repeat¹¹ them too often, after requesting the indulgence of the public,¹¹ placed^a a boy before the musician to chant, while^o he himself performed¹⁹ the gesticulations. And^p this¹¹ he executed¹¹ with much freer²⁰ action, because disengaged from attention to the management of his voice.²¹

⁶ *saltare ad.*

⁷ *tibicen (cc).*

⁸ *motus*: as the verb is a general one, the color is put in the noun.

⁹ *excitari.*

¹⁰ *nomen indere (dd).*

¹¹ Lit. "because a player was called by a Tuscan word" (*h*).

¹² *alternis.*

¹³ *temere.*

¹⁴ *incompositum.*

¹⁵ *impletus (cc).*

¹⁶ Lit. "the song being adjusted (*describere*) to the musician, and the movement corresponding" (*i*).

¹⁷ Simple abl. with *ab*.

¹⁸ Lesson 22, 2.

¹⁹ Lit. "acted the song."

²⁰ *vigens.*

²¹ Lit. "because the use of the voice did not hinder" (*cc, ll, i*).

Hence originated¹ the practice¹ of the chanting being performed by another to the gesticulation of the actors, whose voices were eased^{cc} of all but^{cc} the dialogue. When, by this regulation, the scenic^{ll} business was directed²² to other^{ll} objects^{ll} than laughter and imtemperate mirth, and the amusement¹ was by degrees converted into an art, the younger citizens leaving to professed^{ll} actors the exhibition¹ of plays began, according to the ancient practice, to throw out alternately ludicrous jests,¹ comprised²³ in verse, which thence^{ll} got^y the name of *exodia*, or interludes, and were collected²⁴ principally out of the Atellan¹ farces.

²² *avocare* (cc).

²³ *intexo*.

²⁴ *conserere*.

XXXI. THE FIRE OF LONDON.

I. WHILE the war^{ff} continued^h without¹ any decisive success on either side, a calamity happened in London, which^o threw^{cc} the people into great consternation. Fire, breaking out in a baker's house near the bridge, spread² itself on all sides with such rapidity, that no efforts could extinguish^y it, till it laid in ashes¹ a considerable part of the city. The inhabitants, without⁸ being able to provide⁴ effectually^j for their relief, were reduced¹ to be^o spectators^{ff} of their own ruin;^b and^s were pursued^y from street to street by the flames, which⁵ unexpectedly gathered^y round them. Three days and nights did the fire advance; and^p it was only^{ll} by the blowing-up of houses that^o it was at last extinguished. The king and duke used their utmost endeavors^{ff} to stop the progress of the flames; but all their industry^{ll} was unsuccessful. About four hundred streets and thirteen thousand houses were reduced to ashes.¹

¹ Lesson 23, 2. c.

² *pervagari*.

³ *ut qui*.

⁴ *adhibere* (acc.).

⁵ Lesson 22, 3. b (v).

2. The causes of this calamity were evident. The narrow streets of London,^u the houses built entirely of wood,^b the dry season, and a violent^k east wind which blew, — these were^o so many concurring^u circumstances, which^o rendered it easy to assign the reason of the destruction that ensued.^j But the people were^v not satisfied with this obvious account.^j Prompted by blind rage, some ascribed the guilt to the republicans,^o others to the catholics,^o though it is not easy to conceive^o the burning^f of London could serve the purposes^j of either party.

3. The conflagration was so universal,^x and^r the people so astonished, that from the beginning they hardly stirred⁶ to quench it; so that there was nothing heard or seen but crying^g out and lamentation,^f running⁷ about like distracted creatures, without at all attempting^o to save even their goods. Such a strange consternation there was⁸ upon them, as it burned,^{cc} both in breadth^{ff} and length, the churches, public halls, hospitals, monuments, and ornaments, leaping^v after a prodigious manner from house to house, and street to street, at great distances one from the other; for the heat, with a long set^j of fair and warm weather, had even ignited the air, and prepared the materials to conceive the fire, which devoured, after an incredible manner, houses, furniture, and every thing.

4. Oh the miserable and calamitous spectacle! such as haply the world^j had not seen^j since the foundation of it. God grant^{dd} my eyes may never behold the like.^x The noise and cracking^{ff} of the impetuous flames, the shrieking of women and children, the hurry^{ff} of people, the fall^{ff} of houses and churches,

⁶ *manum vertere* (cc).

⁷ Lesson 22, 2.

⁸ Pluperfect.

was like⁹ a hideous storm, and the air all about so hot and inflamed, that at last one was not able to approach it: so that they were forced¹⁰ to stand still and let the flames burn on, which they did¹¹ for near two miles in length and one in breadth. The clouds¹¹ of smoke were^a dismal, and reached, upon computation,^a near fifty miles in length. Thus I left it this afternoon burning, a resemblance of Sodom, or the last day. London was, but is¹¹ no more.¹¹

⁹ *speciem præbere.* ¹⁰ Part. in *dus.* ¹¹ *in nubes tristes volutus (i).*

XXXII. THE EARTHQUAKE AT LISBON.

1. IT was^o on the morning¹¹ of this fatal day, between the hours¹ of nine and ten, that^o I was set down in my apartment, just² finishing^o a letter, when the papers and³ table I was writing on began to tremble with a gentle motion, which⁴ rather surprised^{cc} me, as I could¹¹ not perceive a breath of wind^d stirring. Whilst I was reflecting with myself what this could¹¹ be owing^{cc} to, the house I was in¹¹ shook^y with such violence, that the upper stories immediately fell, and though^{qq} my apartment (which was on the first floor) did not then share^{cc} the same fate,¹ yet every thing was thrown^x out of its place, in such a manner that it was with no small^h difficulty I kept my feet, and^p expected nothing less than to be soon crushed to death,¹¹ as the walls continued¹¹ rocking to and fro in a frightful manner, opening in several places; large stones falling down on every side from the cracks, and the ends⁵ of most of the rafters starting out from the roof. To add⁶ to this terrifying scene, the sky in

¹ Lesson 17, *e.*

² *jam.*

³ *cum.*

⁴ *quod quidem.*

⁵ Lesson 5, *i.*

⁶ *accedit . . . quod.*

a moment became so gloomy that I could now distinguish no particular object;⁷ it was an Egyptian⁷ darkness indeed, such⁸ as might be felt; owing, no doubt, to the prodigious¹ clouds¹ of dust and lime raised from so violent a concussion,¹¹ and, as some reported, to sulphureous exhalations, but¹² this I cannot affirm; however, it is certain I found¹ myself almost choked⁹ for near ten minutes.⁹

2. I had still presence^d of mind enough left¹¹ to put on a pair of shoes^d and a coat,¹ the first that came in my way, which¹⁰ was every thing^{cc} I saved, and in this dress I hurried down stairs, and made¹ directly to that end of the street which opens¹¹ to the Tagus.

3. In the midst of our devotions,¹¹ the second great¹ shock came on, little less violent than the first, and completed the ruin¹¹ of those buildings which had been already much shattered. You may judge of the force¹¹ of the shock, when I inform¹² you it was so violent that I could scarce keep on my knees; but it was attended¹³ with some circumstances still more dreadful than the former. On a sudden I heard a general outcry,¹¹ "The sea is¹⁴ coming in, we shall be all lost." Upon this, turning my eyes towards the river, which in that place is near four miles broad, I could perceive it heaving and swelling in a most unaccountable¹⁵ manner, as no wing was stirring. In an instant there appeared, at some^h distance, a large body of water, rising as it were like a mountain. It^p came on foaming and roaring, and rushed⁷ towards the shore with such impetuosity, that we all immediately ran for our lives¹ as fast as possible; many were^p actually¹⁶ swept away, and

⁷ Use *cimmerius*.⁸ Express by mood.⁹ *animam intercludere*.¹⁰ *quae quidem*.¹¹ *specto*.¹² *ex eo quod*.¹³ *habeo (j)*.¹⁴ Indir. disc.¹⁵ *mirabilis*.¹⁶ *quidem*.

the rest above their waist in water at a good distance from the banks. For my own part,* I had the narrowest escape,^f and^a should certainly have been lost, had I not grasped a large beam that lay on the ground, till the water returned to its channel, which it did^y almost at the same instant, with equal rapidity. As there now appeared^{co} at least as much danger from the sea^{co} as the land, and I scarce knew¹⁷ whither to retire for shelter,^f I took a sudden resolution of returning back, with my clothes all dripping, to the area of St. Paul's.

4. The new scenes of horror^d I met with here exceed¹⁸ all description; nothing could be heard but sighs and groans; I did not meet with a soul^j in the passage who was not¹⁹ bewailing the death^f of his nearest relations and dearest friends, or the loss^f of all his substance; I could^u hardly take a single step, without¹⁹ treading on the dead or the dying: in some places^d lay coaches, with their masters, horses, and riders, almost crushed in pieces; here mothers, with infants in their arms; there ladies richly dressed, priests, friars, gentlemen, mechanics, either in the same²⁰ condition, or just expiring; some had²¹ their backs or thighs broken, others vast stones on their breasts; some lay almost buried in the rubbish, and, crying out in vain to the passengers for succour, were left to perish with the rest.

5. As soon as it grew dark, another scene presented^j itself little less shocking than those already described:¹¹ the whole city appeared¹¹ in a blaze,²² which was so bright that I could easily see to read by it.²³ It may be said without exaggeration²⁴ it was on

¹⁷ habeo.¹⁸ verba deficere.¹⁹ quin.²⁰ Explain particulars.²¹ esse.²² flamma.²³ With lux (i).²⁴ rem augere.

fire at least in a hundred¹ different places at once, and thus continued¹ burning for six days together, without intermission, or²⁵ the least attempt being made to stop its progress.¹

6. It went¹ on consuming every thing the earthquake had spared,¹ and²⁶ the people were so dejected and terrified, that few or none had¹¹ courage¹¹ enough to venture down to save any part of their substance;¹ every one had his eyes turned towards the flames, and^p stood¹¹ looking on with silent grief, which was only interrupted^y by the cries and shrieks of women and children calling on the saints and angels for succour.

²⁵ *dum* (*p*).

²⁶ Lesson 22, 3. *b*.

XXXIII. CHARACTER OF TRAJAN. — *Gibbon*.

1. TRAJAN¹ was ambitious of fame; and,² as long as mankind shall continue¹ to bestow³ more liberal applause upon their⁴ destroyers than upon their benefactors, the thirst of military glory will ever be the⁵ vice of the most exalted⁶ characters.¹ The praises of Alexander, transmitted by a succession of poets and historians,^c had kindled a dangerous emulation in the mind of Trajan.⁷ Like⁸ him, the Roman emperor undertook¹ an expedition⁸ against the nations of the East; but⁹ he lamented,¹⁰ with a sigh, that his advanced age scarcely left^y him any hopes of equalling the renown of the son^m of Philip.

¹ The proper name should in strictness be omitted, unless opposed to some other person, when it would be introduced by *autem*.

² *etenim* (*qq*).

³ *prosequi* (*l*).

⁴ With *homo*, because it is not the same persons who are destroyed.

⁵ *proprium*.

⁶ *eximus quisque*, to specialize the expression.

⁷ With *hic*: "had kindled him to."

⁸ With clause: introduce with *et vero*. ⁹ Lesson 22, 3. *a*. ¹⁰ *queri*.

2. Yet the success^{cc} of Trajan,^m however transient, was¹¹ rapid^{cc} and specious. The^{qq} degenerate Parthians, broken by intestine discord, fled^l before his arms. He descended¹² the river Tigris in triumph,ⁿ from the mountains of Armenia to the Persian Gulf. He enjoyed the honor¹³ of being^o the first, as^{qq} he was the last, of the Roman generals who ever navigated that remote sea. His fleets ravaged^y the coasts of Arabia; and Trajan vainly flattered himself¹⁴ that he was approaching towards the confines of India. Every¹⁵ day the astonished senate received the intelligence of new names and new nations, that acknowledged his sway. They were informed that the kings of Bosphorus, Colchis, Iberia, Albania, and even the Parthian monarch himself, had accepted their diadems from the hands of the emperor; that the independent tribes of the Median and Carduchian hills had implored his protection; and that the rich countries of Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Assyria, were reduced into the state of provinces.

¹¹ *utor* (*y*).¹² *devehi*.¹³ Lit. "by a singular fortune," &c.¹⁴ Lit. "rejoiced, being deceived by a false hope."¹⁵ *identidem*.

XXXIV. CHARACTER OF CATO. — *Middlcton*.

IN his private^l life^l he was^o severe, morose, inexorable, banishing^o all the softer affections as natural^l enemiesⁿ to justice, and as suggesting false motives^a from favor, clemency, and compassion. In public affairs he was the same; had but one rule of policy,¹¹ — to adhere² to what was right, without³ regard to times or circumstances, or⁴ even to force^l that could

¹ With *natura*.² *amplecti*.³ Lesson 23, 2. c.⁴ New clause with *adeo ut*.

control him: for instead⁵ of managing the power^{ad} of the great so as to mitigate the⁶ ill, or extract any good from it, he was always urging it^x to acts^{ff} of violence by a perpetual defiance;⁸ so that, with the best intention in the world,^j he often did great harm to the republic. This was his general behavior:^{ff} yet from some particular^j facts explained^y above, it appears that his strength⁷ of mind was not impregnable, but had its weak places⁸ of pride, ambition, and party zeal, which, when encouraged^{ll} and flattered to a certain point,⁹ would betray^{lo} him sometimes into measures^{ll} contrary to his ordinary rule of right and truth. The last act^{ff} of his life was agreeable to his nature and philosophy.^l When he could not longer be what^l he had been, and when the ills of life o'erbalanced^y the good (which, by the principles^l of his sect,^l was a just cause for dying), he put an end to his life with^{ll} a spirit and resolution which would make one imagine that he was glad to have found^o an occasion of dying in his proper character.^d On the whole,¹² his life¹³ was rather admirable than amiable, fit to be praised rather than imitated.¹⁴

⁵ Rel. clause with *decere*.⁶ Clause with *si* (*h*).⁷ *constantia*.⁸ With *aditus* (*i*).⁹ *finis*.¹⁰ *abducere*, with personal subject.¹¹ *usus*.¹² Clause with *ut*.¹³ With verb.¹⁴ With *exemplum proponere*.

XXXV. OF STUDIES. — Bacon.

1. STUDIES^o serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability. Their^a chief use^{ff} for delight is in privateness and retiring; for ornament, is in discourse; and for ability, is in the judgment^{ff} and disposition^{ad} of business; for expert men can execute, and perhaps

judge of particulars one by one; but the general counsels, and the plots¹ and marshalling² of affairs, come best from those that are learned. To spend too much time in studies, is sloth; to use them too much for ornament, is affectation; to make judgment wholly by their rules, is the humor³ of a scholar. They perfect nature, and are³ perfected by experience; for natural abilities⁴ are like natural plants,⁴ that need pruning by study; and studies themselves do give forth directions too much at large,⁵ except they be bounded in by experience. Crafty men contemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them; for they⁶ teach not their own use; but⁷ that is⁸ a wisdom without them and above them, won by observation.¹⁰

2. Read not to contradict and confute, nor to believe and take for granted, nor to find¹¹ talk and discourse, but to weigh and consider. Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and digested; that is,⁹ some books are to be read only in parts;¹⁰ others to be read, but not curiously; and some few to be read wholly,¹¹ but with dilligence and attention. Some books also may be read by deputy, and extracts made of them by others; but that would be¹¹ only in the less important arguments¹² and the meaner sort¹¹ of books; else distilled⁹ books are like common distilled waters, flashy¹³ things.¹¹

3. Reading maketh⁷ a full man;¹¹ conference a ready man; and writing an exact man; and,⁹ there-

¹ *ratio.*² *ordo.*³ Insert *ipse* for the antithesis.⁴ Use *vitis* or some particular word (*i*).⁵ *remissus ac solutus.*⁶ *ut qui.*⁷ *qui quidem.*⁸ *nascor ex.*⁹ *quod dicit.*¹⁰ *percurrere.*¹¹ *per* in comp.¹² *loci.*¹³ *vapidus.*

fore, if a man write little, he had need have a great memory; if he confer little, he had need have a present wit; and if he read little, he had need have much cunning, to seem to know that he doth not. Histories¹ make men wise; poetry, witty; the mathematics,¹ subtile; natural philosophy, deep; moral, grave; logic and rhetoric, able to contend: *Abeunt studia in mores*;¹⁴ nay, there is no stand or impediment in the wit, but may be wrought out by fit studies.

¹⁴ Insert *ut aiunt* to show the proverb.

XXXVI. ANTONY IN DEFEAT. — *North's Plutarch.*

I. ANTONIUS, flying upon this overthrow, fell¹ into great misery all at once; but the chiefest want of all other, and that pinched him most, was^o famine. Howbeit, he was^{cc} of such a strong nature, that by patience he would^a overcome^s any adversity: and^v the heavier fortune lay upon him, the more constant shewed he himself. Every man that feeleth want or adversity knoweth by virtue and discretion what he should² do; but when indeed they are overlaid¹ with extremity, and be sore oppressed, few have the hearts¹ to follow that which they praise and commend, and much less³ to avoid that they reprove and mislike; but rather³ to the contrary,² they yield to their accustomed easy life, and, through faint heart^b and lack^{ff} of courage, do change their first mind^b and purpose. And therefore it was a wonderful example^x to the soldiers, to see¹¹ Antonius,^v that was brought up in all fineness and superfluity, so easily to drink puddle-water, and to

¹ *excipere* (cc).

² *optimum factu.*

³ *non modo . . . sed etiam.*

eat wild fruits and roots. And moreover it is reported, that even as they passed the Alps, they did eat the barks of trees, and such beasts as never man tasted of their flesh before.

2. Now their intent was to join with the legions that were on the other side⁴ of the mountains, under Lepidus' charge;⁵ whom Antonius took to be his friend, because he had holpen him to many things at Cæsar's hand, through his means. When he was come to the place where Lepidus was,¹ he camped hard by him; and when he saw that no man came to him to put⁶ him in any hope, he determined to venture himself, and to go unto Lepidus. Since the overthrow he had⁸ at Modena, he suffered⁸ his beard to grow at length, and never clipt it, that it was marvellous long, and the hair of his head also without combing; and besides all this, he went in a mourning^{da} gown, and after this⁶ sort came hard to the trenches of Lepidus' camp. Then he began to speak⁸ unto the soldiers, and many of them their hearts yearned⁷ for pity to see him so poorly arrayed, and some also through his words began to pity¹ him: insomuch that Lepidus began to be afraid, and therefore commanded all the trumpets to sound together to stop the soldiers' ears, that they should not hearken¹ to Antonius.

3. This notwithstanding,² the soldiers took⁸ the more pity of him, and spake secretly with him by Clodius' and Lælius' means, whom they sent unto him disguised in women's apparel, and gave him counsel that he should not be afraid to enter into their camp, for there were a great number of soldiers that would receive him, and kill Lepidus, if he would say the

⁴ With *transgredi*.

⁵ *confirmare*.

⁶ *miser* (*i, v, x*).

⁷ *commovere* (*i, s*).

word. Antonius would not suffer them to hurt him, but the next morning he went with his army to wade a ford, at a little river that ran between them; and himself was the foremost man that took^o the river to get over, seeing a number of Lepidus' camp,¹ that gave him their hands, plucked up the stakes, and laid flat⁸ the bank of their trench to let him into their camp. When he was come into their camp,¹ and that he had all the army at his commandment, he used Lepidus very courteously, embraced him, and called him father: and^p though indeed Antonius^m did all, and ruled the whole army, yet he always gave Lepidus the name and honor of the captain.

⁸ *complanare.*

XXXVII. SPEECH OF ANTONY. — *Shakespeare.*

FRIENDS, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears :
 I come to bury Cæsar, not to praise him.
 The evil that men do lives after them ;
 The good is oft interred with their bones :
 So let it be with Cæsar. The noble Brutus
 Hath told you Cæsar was ambitious :
 If it were so, it was a grievous fault ;
 And grievously hath Cæsar answer'd it.
 Here, under leave of Brutus and the rest, —
 For Brutus is an honourable man ;
 So are they all, all honourable men, —
 Come I to speak in Cæsar's funeral.

He was my friend, faithful and just to me :
 But Brutus says he was ambitious ;
 And Brutus is an honourable man.
 He hath brought many captives home to Rome,
 Whose ransoms did the general coffers fill :
 Did this in Cæsar seem ambitious ?
 When that the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept :

Ambition should be made of sterner stuff :

Yet Brutus says he was ambitious ;

And Brutus is an honourable man.

You all did see that on the Lupercal

I thrice presented him a kingly crown,

Which he did thrice refuse. Was this ambition ?

Yet Brutus says he was ambitious ;

And, sure, he is an honourable man.

I speak not to disprove what Brutus spoke,

But here I am, to speak what I do know.

You all did love him once, — not without cause :

What cause withholds you, then, to mourn for him ? —

O judgment, thou art fled to brutish beasts,

And men have lost their reason ! — Bear with me ;

My heart is in the coffin there with Cæsar,

And I must pause till it come back to me.

1 *Cit.* Methinks there is much reason in his sayings.

2 *Cit.* If thou consider rightly of the matter,

Cæsar has had great wrong.

3 *Cit.*

Has he not, masters ?

I fear there will a worse come in his place.

4 *Cit.* Mark'd ye his words ? He would not take the crown ;

Therefore 'tis certain he was not ambitious.

1 *Cit.* If it be found so, some will dear abide it.

2 *Cit.* Poor soul ! his eyes are red as fire with weeping.

3 *Cit.* There's not a nobler man in Rome than Antony.

4 *Cit.* Now mark him ; he begins again to speak.

Ant. But yesterday the word of Cæsar might

Have stood against the world : now lies he there,

And none so poor to do him reverence.

O masters, if I were dispos'd to stir

Your hearts and minds to mutiny and rage,

I should do Brutus wrong, and Cassius wrong,

Who, you all know, are honourable men.

I will not do them wrong : I rather choose

To wrong the dead, to wrong myself, and you,

Than I will wrong such honourable men.

But here's a parchment with the seal of Cæsar, —
 I found it in his closet, — 'tis his will :
 Let but the commons hear this testament,
 (Which, pardon me, I do not mean to read,)
 And they would go and kiss dead Cæsar's wounds,
 And dip their napkins in his sacred blood ;
 Yea, beg a hair of him for memory,
 And, dying, mention it within their wills,
 Bequeathing it as a rich legacy
 Unto their issue.

4 *Cit.* We'll hear the will : read it, Mark Antony.

Citizens. The will, the will ! we will hear Cæsar's will.

Ant. Have patience, gentle friends ; I must not read it :
 It is not meet you know how Cæsar lov'd you.
 You are not wood, you are not stones, but men ;
 And, being men, hearing the will of Cæsar,
 It will inflame you, it will make you mad.
 'Tis good you know not that you are his heirs ;
 For, if you should, O, what would come of it !

4 *Cit.* Read the will ! we'll hear it, Antony ;
 You shall read us the will, — Cæsar's will !

Ant. Will you be patient ? will you stay awhile ?
 I have o'ershot myself, to tell you of it.
 I fear I wrong the honourable men
 Whose daggers have stabb'd Cæsar ; I do fear it.

4 *Cit.* They were traitors : honourable men !

Citizens. The will ! the testament !

2 *Cit.* They were villains, murderers. The will ! read the will !

Ant. You will compel me, then, to read the will ?
 Then make a ring about the corpse of Cæsar,
 And let me show you him that made the will.
 Shall I descend ? and will you give me leave ?

Citizens. Come down.

2 *Cit.* Descend.

[*He comes down.*]

3 *Cit.* You shall have leave.

4 *Cit.* A ring ! stand round.

1 *Cit.* Stand from the hearse ; stand from the body.

2 *Cit.* Room for Antony ! — most noble Antony !

Ant. Nay, press not so upon me ; stand far off.

Citizens. Stand back ; room ! bear back.

Ant. If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.

You all do know this mantle : I remember

The first time ever Cæsar put it on ;

'Twas on a Summer's evening, in his tent,

That day he overcame the Nervii.

Look, in this place ran Cassius' dagger through :

See what a rent the envious Casca made :

Through this the well-beloved Brutus stabb'd ;

And, as he pluck'd his cursed steel away,

Mark how the blood of Cæsar follow'd it, —

As rushing out of doors, to be resolv'd

If Brutus so unkindly knock'd, or no ;

For Brutus, as you know, was Cæsar's angel :

Judge, O you gods, how dearly Cæsar lov'd him !

This was the most unkindest cut of all ;

For, when the noble Cæsar saw him stab,

Ingratitude, more strong than traitors' arms,

Quite vanquish'd him : then burst his mighty heart ;

And, in his mantle muffling up his face,

Even at the base of Pompey's statua,

Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell.

O, what a fall was there, my countrymen !

Then I, and you, and all of us fell down,

Whilst bloody treason flourish'd over us.

O, now you weep ; and, I perceive, you feel

The dint of pity : these are gracious drops.

Kind souls, what, weep you, when you but behold

Our Cæsar's vesture wounded ? Look you here,

Here is himself, marr'd, as you see, with traitors.

1 *Cit.* O piteous spectacle !

2 *Cit.* O noble Cæsar !

3 *Cit.* O woeful day !

4 *Cit.* O traitors, villains !

1 *Cit.* O most bloody sight !

2 *Cit.* We will be reveng'd.

Citizens. Revenge, — about, — seek, — burn, — fire, — kill,
— slay, — let not a traitor live !

Ant. Stay, countrymen.

1 *Cit.* Peace there ! hear the noble Antony.

2 *Cit.* We'll hear him, we'll follow him, we'll die with him.

Ant. Good friends, sweet friends, let me not stir you up
To such a sudden flood of mutiny.

They that have done this deed are honourable :

What private griefs they have, alas, I know not,

That made them do't ; they're wise and honourable,

And will, no doubt, with reasons answer you.

I come not, friends, to steal away your hearts :

I am no orator, as Brutus is ;

But, as you know me all, a plain blunt man,

That love my friend ; and that they know full well

That gave me public leave to speak of him.

For I have neither wit, nor words, nor worth,

Action, nor utterance, nor the power of speech,

To stir men's blood : I only speak right on ;

I tell you that which you yourselves do know ;

Show you sweet Cæsar's wounds, poor, poor dumb mouths,

And bid them speak for me : but were I Brutus,

And Brutus Antony, there were an Antony

Would ruffle up your spirits, and put a tongue

In every wound of Cæsar, that should move

The stones of Rome to rise in mutiny.

INDEX.

- A or AN (indefinite article), 18.
 Ablative as Object, 21 ; of Separation, 32 ; with Comparatives, 32 ; of Time, 39 ; Ablative Absolute, use of, 58.
 Abstract term, expressed by substantive clause, 75 ; use of, avoided in Latin, 121, 122.
 Accusative as Object, 21.
 Adjective, position of, 2 ; agreement, 6 ; special uses, 8 ; used as noun, 8 ; as abstract, 9 ; for the possessive, 9 ; with Cases, 23 ; for genitive, 35.
 A FEW, or SEVERAL, 18.
 Allusive expressions (in English), often omitted in Latin, 125.
 Antecedent noun in relative clause, preceding the demonstrative, 15.
 ANY ("any one who"), 18.
 Apposition, examples of its use, 3.
 AS (correlative), 16.
 CASES, constructions of, 20-44 ; as objects of Verbs, 20 ; as modifying Adjectives, 23 ; indirect relations, 25 ; expressing Cause, Means, and Quality, 28 ; Separation and Comparison, 32 ; the Genitive, 34 ; use of Two Cases, 37 ; of Time and Place, 39 ; with Prepositions, 43.
 Cause and Occasion, 29 ; clauses of, 69.
 Characteristic, clauses of, 70.
 Compound Verbs, regimen of, 43, 44.
 Concessive expressions, 73.
 Concrete terms preferred in Latin, 122.
 Conditional Sentences, 72.
Cum or *dum*, clause with, used instead of participle, 57, 58.
 Dates, how expressed, 40.
 Dative of indirect object, 21 ; various uses of, 25-27.
 Depriving, expressions of, 32.
Dum, clause with, used instead of participle, 57, 58.
 EACH, 19 ; EITHER, 18 ; EVERY, 19.
 Exclamation, forms of, 86.
 "Far from" (with participial noun), how to be expressed, 83.
 "From" (with participial noun), expressed by *quominus* or *quin*, 84.
 General Precepts, how expressed in Latin, 64.
 Genitive, its position, 2 ; as object, 21 ; of value, 30 ; special uses of, 34 ; partitive uses, 35.
 Gerundive constructions (English participial noun), 60.
 HAVE, its uses as auxiliary, 84.
 Hendiadys, in Latin use, 5, 123.
 Historical Infinitive, 46.
 Historical Present, 45.
 Hour of the day, 40.
 Imperative forms of expression, 63.
 Indirect Discourse, 80.
 Indirect Questions, 81.
 Infinitive, its uses, 53-56 ; historical, 46 ; as abstract noun, 53 ; forms in Indirect Discourse, 54.
 "In respect to" (specification), 24.
 Intermediate Clauses, 77, 78.
Jam, to express beginning of an action, 46.
 "Law," expressions for, in Latin, 120.
 Literal forms of speech, 123.

- Main Word, position of, 2, 129.
 "Manage to," &c., how expressed in Latin, 83.
 Modifying word, position of, 2.
 Months, names of, 40.
 MUST, &c., expressed by Gerundive (always passive), 49.
 Object Cases, 20, 21; indirect, 26, 37; after compound verbs, 43, 44.
Officium, equivalent to "sense of duty," 121.
 Order of Words, 1-3.
 OUGHT, &c. (Gerundive), 49.
 Parenthetical expressions, "to be brief," "so to speak," &c., 84.
 Participial Noun (-ING), how expressed in Latin, 60; Constructions, 57.
 Participles: agreement of, in compound tenses, 7; substituted by temporal clause, 57; as modifiers, 58.
 Passive Voice, uses of, 49, 50; use of cases with, 51.
 Periodical structure, 126.
 Place, names of, and their construction, 41.
 Point of View in Latin often differs from that in English, 43, 121.
 Position expressed by *ab*, 43.
 Possessives, 11, 12.
 Potential Mood (English), how expressed in Latin, 63.
 Prepositions (Latin), use of, 42; in Compounds, 43, 44.
 Price and Value, how expressed, 30.
 Pronoun, use of, 5, 10; Reflexive, 11; Demonstrative, 13; Relative, 14; Interrogative, 17; Indefinite, 18.
 Purpose, with Gerundive, 61; Clause of, 69, 70.
 Quality, how expressed, 29.
Quin or *quominus*, clause with, 84.
 Reflexive Pronoun, 11.
 Relative Clause, its position, 2, 15; the relative not to be omitted, 15; used for other constructions, 15; as Connective, 16; caution as to its use, 126 (*o*), 128 (*v*).
 Result, Clause of, 69.
 Saying, &c., Verbs of, followed by Indirect Discourse, 54, 80.
 Sentence, form of, 126-129.
 Separation, &c., 32.
 SEVERAL, 18.
Societas (the Latin word), 121.
 Subject, to be expressed in indirect discourse, 80; is a person rather than a thing, a thing rather than an abstraction, 121.
 Subjunctive (English), how rendered in Latin, 63.
 Substantive Clauses, 74-76; for abstract noun, 75.
 Tenses, narrative, use of, 45, 46; perfect and imperfect, 45; present as perfect, 46; sequence of, in indirect discourse, 81; with *as if*, and similar phrases, 73.
 THAT, as preventing repetition, 12; as introducing indirect discourse, 54, 80; various clauses with, 75.
 Time, expressions of, 40; relations of, 66.
 TO or FOR, 24, 25, 26.
 "To be brief," "so to speak," and similar phrases, 84.
 TOO . . . TO, expressed by comparative with *quam ut*, 70, 71.
 Two Cases following a verb, 37.
 Value, expressions of, 30.
 Verb, agreement of, 4, 5; uses of, 45-64.
 WHEN, expressions signifying, 66; meaning *whenever*, 67; meaning *since*, 67.
 WITHOUT, followed by Participial Noun, how expressed in Latin, 61.
 Word or Phrase, choice of, 110-126.

INDEX

TO THE SYNTAX OF ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR, WITH
PARALLEL REFERENCES TO GILDERSLEEVE'S GRAMMAR.

| A. & G. | G. | A. & G. | G. | A. & G. | G. |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 45 | i 192 | 48 | 3 | 50 | c 376 |
| 2 | " | a | 617 | R | " R |
| 3 | 284, 326 | b | 618, 622 | d | 381, 382 |
| 4 | | c | 622 | e | 389 R 2 |
| 5 | 474 | d | 618 | | 405 R 3 |
| 6 | 475, 612 | e | 616 R 2 | R | 418 end |
| 7 | 201, 202 R 1 | 4 | 612 R 1 | 51 | 343 |
| 8 | | 5 | 613 R 1 | N | " R 1 |
| 46 | 202, 319 | 49 | 202 | i | 344 |
| i | 318 | R | 319 R 1 | a | " |
| 2 | 197, 324 | i | 281 & R 2 | b | " R 1 |
| a | 319 | a | 283 | c | 348 |
| b | 412 R 2 | b | " R 2 | 2 | 345 |
| c | 319 R 2 | c | 202 R 1 | a | " |
| N | 359 | d | 281 Exc. 1 | R | " R 1 |
| 47 | 202, 285 | 2 | 194 | R 2 | 347 |
| R | 324 | a | 198 | R 3 | " |
| i | 281 | b | 199 R 3 | b | 345 |
| 2 | 286 | c | 688, 200 | c | 346, 344 |
| a | 281 Exc. 2 | 50 | 357 | d | " |
| b | 282 | i | 360 | R 1 | 330 |
| c | " | a | " R 1 | R 2 | " |
| d | 202 R 1 | b | " R 3 | e | 346 |
| e | 202 R 5 | c | 365 | | 344 R 2 |
| f | 616 R 3 | d | " R 1 | R | " |
| 3 | 202 R 2 | R | " R 2, 3 | f | 208 |
| N | 195 R 1 | e | 367 R | g | 345 R 3 |
| a | " | f | 359 | | 344 R 3 |
| b | 203 R 2 | g | 364 | | 388 R 1 |
| c | 284 R | h | " R | 3 | 349 |
| | 440 | i | 379 | R | " R 2 |
| 4 | | R | 372 | a | 346 |
| a | 195 R 2 | 2 | 366 | b | 322 |
| b | " | a | 369 | 4 | 206 |
| c | 202 R 4 | b | 368 | a | 353 |
| d | 423 | c | 371 | b | 352 |
| e | 535 | R | " R 2 | c | " R |
| N | 195 R 4 | d | 371 | R | " |
| 5 | 360 R 1 | e | " R 7 | 5 | 350 |
| a | " | R 1 | " R 5 | R | " |
| b | 363 | R 2 | 370 R 2 | 6 | 356 & R 6 |
| c | " R 1 | R 3 | 368 R 2 | a | " R 3 |
| 6 | 324 R 6 | R 4 | 361 R 2 | b | " R 2 |
| 7 | 314 | 3 | 361 | c | " R 1 |
| a | " | a | 357 R 1 | R | " |
| b | | b | 373, 374 | d | " R 4 |
| 8 | 287 R | c | 374 R 2 | e | 355 |
| 9 | 306 | R | " R 3 | 7 | 343 |
| 48 | 616 | d | 356 R 1 | N | " |
| N | 616 | R | 361 R 1 | a | " R 2 |
| i | " R 3 | 4 | | b | 354 |
| 2 | 619 | a | 375 | c | " R |
| a | 618 R 3 | R | " R 1, 2 | d | 351 |
| | | b | 377 & R 1 | R | 344 R 1 |
| | | R | " R 2 | 52 | 327 |

Parallel References.

| A. & G. | G. | A. & G. | G. | A. & G. | G. | | |
|---------|--|---------|----|---|----|----|--|
| 52 | R 207 I 329 R 207 a 329 R I b 331 c 329 R I d 330 e 696 f 2 333 a 334 b 330 R I c 333 R 2 d " & R 2 3 331 R 2 " " " " c 332 R 2 4 340 a 527 b 335-8 c 194 R 3 | | 54 | b 401 & R 8 404 a 379 R 380 b 279 9 397 10 387 a 407, 373 R I 403 R 3 b 408-9 N 408 R c 438 R 2 d 384, 392 55 392, 337 a " " b 392 R 2 2 335 M 328 a 364 R b 335 3 342, 384, 388 N 413 a 411 b 410 R 436 c 412 R 39 R d 412 R I e " R 3 f 385-6, 384 R 2 R 410 R 3, 4 411 R I | | 57 | N 254 R I " R 2 5 257, 608, 610 R 6 251, 258 7 259 a 264, 266 b 267 R 262 c " R 260 R d 265, 268 8 420 N 341 R a 423, 535 b 535 c 424 d " R 2, 3 N 271, 4 e 527 N 276 R I 535 R 2 R 2 197 R I f 527 R 3 341 R 424 R 4 R " g 341 N 534, 560 R h 650 213 I 270 2 218 a 221 b 218 R 2 c 219 d 220 e " R I f 511 R I 3 222 a " b 225 c 224 d " R 3 e 246 R 2 4 234 5 226 a 228 b 569 c 228 R 2 d 224 R 227 R 2 6 233 7 236 R " R 2-4 8 244 9 271 10 510, 216 a 511 R 2 b 510 R c 513 d " e 511 R 1 f 599 R 5 g 517 R 2 h 519 & R 11 276 a 246 |
| 53 | a 324 R I b 338 | | | | | | |
| 54 | N 388-9 I 388 a 388 b 390 c 390 d 380 R 2 e 373 R 6 R 394 a 395 b 396 & R 2 c 396 R I d 406-7 3 383 N 398 R 2 a 407 R I b 372 & R c 403 4 205 R I a 403 5 399 N 397 a 311 R I R " R 2 b 399 R I c 311 R 4 N 399 R I 6 401, 403 a 391, 401, 403 R 346 R 2, 348 b 389 & R I c 373 R 6 d 405 e 400 R 402 7 402 a " R I | | 56 | 4 413 I " a 417 b 418 c 419 R 384 R I d 419 e " " f Appendix g 418 R " end 2 416 R a App'x; 356 R 4 b 418 R c 417 R d 416 R 3 566, 576 4 403 R " 5 414 R 57 245 R I 246 2 247 a 250-258 597-599 b 509, 469, 562 N 3 256 a 266 R 2 N 266-7 b 266 R 2 c 575 d 266 R 3 4 253, 255 a 253 b 254 | | 58 | I 270 2 218 a 221 b 218 R 2 c 219 d 220 e " R I f 511 R I 3 222 a " b 225 c 224 d " R 3 e 246 R 2 4 234 5 226 a 228 b 569 c 228 R 2 d 224 R 227 R 2 6 233 7 236 R " R 2-4 8 244 9 271 10 510, 216 a 511 R 2 b 510 R c 513 d " e 511 R 1 f 599 R 5 g 517 R 2 h 519 & R 11 276 a 246 |

Parallel References.

| A. & G. | G. | A. & G. | G. | A & G. | G. | | |
|---------|--|---------|--|--------|---|----|---|
| 58 | b 277 & R 530 c 274 d 275 e " f 240 590 | 62 | N 582 R 1 " R 2 581 R R 3 582 c 579, 574 R R 577-9 d 574-5 e 587 & R N " | 68 | I 253-4 R 254 R 2 2 256 266 264 546 R 1 655 626 | | |
| 59 | I " a 591 & R 3 N 628 b 590 2 596* a " b 568-9 N 596* c 596 3 597 a " b 599 N " c " R 1 d " R 2 e 246 R 3 f 599 R 3, 5 4 597-8 a 597 b 598 c 236 R 2 d 597-8 e 195 R 6 f 598 R 1 5 596* a 597 R 3 b 599 R 2 c 246 R 4 | 63 | I 539, 587 R 2 541 a 636 b 587 64 I 544 R 545 N " a 545, 2 b 688 R c 484 R 2 546 2 544 R 1 & 2 65 I 553, 554 R 543, 558 R 4 a 547, 549 b 550, 551 2 633 N 634 a 633 b 313 c 629 R d 637 e 556 R 2 f 509, 3, 4 66 I 509, 2 a 509, 3 b " c 541 R 539 R 541 R 1 N " 2 666 665 67 651 " R 1 I 653 a 424 R 3 527 R 2 R 644 b 630 R 1, 2 c 638, 644 R 659 N " R 2 d 654 R 1 2 " R 2 2 469, 654 a 454 b 514, 515 R 3 c 654 R 2 d 470 e 469 R 3 f " R 1 N " e " R 2 f 462, 603 3 655 664 | 69 | I 628 (1) (2) a 632 b 633 c 634 d 636, 637 e 582 (3) a 509 b " 70 R 507 I 526 2 507 2 527, 532 a 528 b " R c 652 R 2 d 527 R 3 3 546 a " & R 1 b 532 c " R 608 d 424 546 & R 2 200 e 547, 549 f 552 R 546 R 3 547 R 2 532 R 4 4 557 a 558 b 647 R 4 c 560 R " R d 558 R 1 e 557 f 559 R 551, 1 " 2 h 546 R 2 N 525 5 " R 2 b 542, 533 R | 71 | I 451 foll. R 456-8 a 455 b 462 c 469 R 454 c 460 d 459 R 2 460 a 461 a 460 b 459 c 461 R |
| 60 | I " a " b 600 c " 2 602 R 613 R 2 a 602 b 252 R 1 c 246 R 1-3 R " | 68 | I 582 R 1 " R 2 581 R R 3 582 c 579, 574 R R 577-9 d 574-5 e 587 & R N " | 69 | I 628 (1) (2) a 632 b 633 c 634 d 636, 637 e 582 (3) a 509 b " 70 R 507 I 526 2 507 2 527, 532 a 528 b " R c 652 R 2 d 527 R 3 3 546 a " & R 1 b 532 c " R 608 d 424 546 & R 2 200 e 547, 549 f 552 R 546 R 3 547 R 2 532 R 4 4 557 a 558 b 647 R 4 c 560 R " R d 558 R 1 e 557 f 559 R 551, 1 " 2 h 546 R 2 N 525 5 " R 2 b 542, 533 R | 71 | I 451 foll. R 456-8 a 455 b 462 c 469 R 454 c 460 d 459 R 2 460 a 461 a 460 b 459 c 461 R |
| 61 | d 604 foll. 604 " " 2 606 foll. 3 575 4 592 a 592 R 2, 5 b " R 4 c 597 R 4 499 d 606-10 612 R 2 561 I 563 568-9 2 522, 2 N 582 R 1, 633 a 563 R 1 564-5 R 2 563 R b 582 | 69 | I 582 R 1 " R 2 581 R R 3 582 c 579, 574 R R 577-9 d 574-5 e 587 & R N " | 70 | I 628 (1) (2) a 632 b 633 c 634 d 636, 637 e 582 (3) a 509 b " 70 R 507 I 526 2 507 2 527, 532 a 528 b " R c 652 R 2 d 527 R 3 3 546 a " & R 1 b 532 c " R 608 d 424 546 & R 2 200 e 547, 549 f 552 R 546 R 3 547 R 2 532 R 4 4 557 a 558 b 647 R 4 c 560 R " R d 558 R 1 e 557 f 559 R 551, 1 " 2 h 546 R 2 N 525 5 " R 2 b 542, 533 R | 71 | I 451 foll. R 456-8 a 455 b 462 c 469 R 454 c 460 d 459 R 2 460 a 461 a 460 b 459 c 461 R |
| 62 | I 563 568-9 2 522, 2 N 582 R 1, 633 a 563 R 1 564-5 R 2 563 R b 582 | 70 | I 628 (1) (2) a 632 b 633 c 634 d 636, 637 e 582 (3) a 509 b " 70 R 507 I 526 2 507 2 527, 532 a 528 b " R c 652 R 2 d 527 R 3 3 546 a " & R 1 b 532 c " R 608 d 424 546 & R 2 200 e 547, 549 f 552 R 546 R 3 547 R 2 532 R 4 4 557 a 558 b 647 R 4 c 560 R " R d 558 R 1 e 557 f 559 R 551, 1 " 2 h 546 R 2 N 525 5 " R 2 b 542, 533 R | 71 | I 451 foll. R 456-8 a 455 b 462 c 469 R 454 c 460 d 459 R 2 460 a 461 a 460 b 459 c 461 R | | |

Parallel References.

| A. & G. | | G. | A. & G. | | G. | A. & G. | | G. |
|---------|---|------------|---------|---|--------------|---------|---|-----------|
| 71 | d | 460, 463 | 72 | b | 390 | 73 | 2 | 428 |
| | 3 | 473 | | c | 230 | | R | " R 3 |
| | a | " | | d | 537 | | N | 427 R I |
| | b | " | | e | comp. 275, 2 | | 3 | 429 fell. |
| 72 | i | 278 | | d | 536, 524 R I | | a | 429 & R |
| | a | " 373 R | | 4 | 279 | | R | " |
| | b | 278 R | | a | 239, 673 | | b | 430 & R |
| | c | 572 R, 586 | | b | 599 R 3 | | c | 433 |
| | 2 | 438 | | 5 | 243 | | d | 437, 434 |
| | a | 439 | | a | 439 | | R | " |
| | b | " R | | b | 243 | 74 | N | " |
| | c | 242 | | R | " R | | I | 435 |
| | d | " R | | c | 428 R 3 | | R | 436 |
| | 3 | 667 | | i | 431 | | 2 | " R I |
| | R | " R I | 73 | i | 427 | | R | 437 |
| | a | " R 2 | | R | " R I, 426 | | R | " R I |

NEW BOOKS

AND

NEW EDITIONS FOR 1879.

LATIN.

A BRIEF HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. Translated and Edited from the German Edition of Bender by Professor E. P. Crowell and H. B. Richardson, A.M., Amherst College, Mass. (*Ready in August.*)

DE NATURA DEORUM. Translated and Edited from the German Edition of Schoeman by Professor Austin Stickney, formerly of Trinity College, Hartford. (*Ready in August.*)

REMNANTS OF EARLY LATIN, chiefly Inscriptions. Selected and Explained, for use in Colleges, by Frederick D. Allen, Professor of Latin in the University of Cincinnati. (*Ready in June.*)

Prepared to meet the need which many of our best teachers of Latin feel, of acquainting students with the earliest forms of Latin, as an aid to the better comprehension of the structure of the language. There is no such book in existence, the nearest thing to it being the large and extensive work of Wordsworth, which is not adapted to school use.

A CRITICAL HISTORY OF CICERO'S LETTERS. By R. F. Leighton, Ph.D., Principal of Brooklyn, N. Y., High School. The History of the Letters "ad Familiares" is nearly ready.

A N ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON LATIN ORTHOGRAPHY. Embracing the Latest Researches of Brambach, Ritschel, and others. With a Vocabulary of Words often Misspelled. By R. F. Leighton, Ph.D., Principal of Brooklyn, N. Y., High School.

SELECTIONS FROM THE LESS-KNOWN LATIN POETS — viz., Catullus, Lucretius, the Elegiac Writers, Lucan and Martial. By E. P. Crowell, A.M., Professor of Latin, Amherst College.

PARALLEL SYNTAX OF THE MOODS IN GREEK AND LATIN. Prepared by R. P. Keep, Ph.D., Instructor in the Classical Department of Williston Seminary, at Easthampton, Mass. (*Ready in June.*)

A NEW AND COMPLETE VIRGIL. This Edition will be printed from wholly new plates, and will be fully annotated by Professor J. B. Greenough, Harvard University. It will also have numerous illustrations from the antique.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

A REVISED EDITION OF ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION. Simplified, carefully Graded, and Adapted to the New Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. By W. F. Allen, Professor of Latin and History at University of Wisconsin and Lecturer at Johns Hopkins University. (*Ready in September.*)

THE AGRICOLA OF TACITUS. Edited for School and College Use by W. F. Allen, Professor of Latin in University of Wisconsin.

GREEK.

THE PROMETHEUS OF AESCHYLUS. Edited, with Notes and Introduction, by Frederick D. Allen, Professor of Greek in the University of Cincinnati.

SELECT ORATIONS OF DEMOSTHENES. Edited by Frank B. Tarbell, Yale College. This work will contain the three Philippics and the Oration On the Chersonese, from the Zürich Edition of the Text, with an Extended Historical Introduction and Explanatory Notes.

THE PUBLIC HARANGUES OF DEMOSTHENES. Edited by Isaac Flagg, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Cornell University, Ithaca, N. Y.

This work has been undertaken in view of the fact that several speeches belonging to this head, of great merit and importance, have not as yet appeared in a form convenient for college reading. The commentary, appended to a carefully edited text, will be adapted to the requirements of students well advanced in Greek. Part First, forming a small volume by itself, will contain the three Hellenic Orations, *Symmories*, *Megalopolitans*, and *Rhodians*.

SELECTIONS FROM THE GREEK LYRIC POETS, with an Historical Introduction and Explanatory Notes. By Henry M. Tyler, Professor of Greek and Latin in Smith College, Northampton, Mass. (*Ready in June.*)

SELECTIONS FROM PINDAR AND THE BUCOLIC POETS, Containing six Odes of Pindar, four Idylls of Theocritus, a Hymn of Callimachus, a Hymn of Cleanthes, and one of the Homeric Hymns; in all thirteen hundred lines. Edited by Professor T. D. Seymour, Western Reserve College, Ohio. (*Ready in January, 1880.*)

THE FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. By Professor F. E. Anderson, of Harvard University.

FIRST TWELVE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ODYSSEY. With Introduction, Notes, and Tables of Homeric Forms, for School Use. By W. W. Merry, A.M., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College, Oxford, England.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

LEIGHTON'S NEW GREEK LESSONS. With notes, references, and full vocabulary; and references to Hadley's Greek Grammar, as well as to Goodwin's New Greek Grammar. The Lessons have been rewritten and arranged on the plan of the author's Latin Lessons, introducing the verb from the first.

About sixty easy and well graded lessons, both Greek and English (one term's work), introduces the pupil to the first book of Xenophon's *Anabasis*. Definite directions are given in regard to the amount of the Grammar to be learned. The pupil is given a clear idea of noun and verb stems, and also some insight into the formation of words from stems and roots by means of significant endings. Questions for Review and examination as in the first edition. The amount of matter to be translated into Greek is sufficient to prepare a student in Greek composition for any American college. In preparing these lessons, considerable use has been made of the excellent exercises used in most of the German Gymnasiums, prepared by Dr. Wasener to accompany Professor Curtius' Greek Grammar.

A NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION OF WHITON'S LYSIAS. Two new orations will be added to those which the book now contains. (*Ready in September.*)

MATHEMATICS.

A SERIES OF ARITHMETICS, Consisting of two books, Primary and Written. By Dr. Thomas Hill, ex-President of Harvard College, and George A. Wentworth, Professor of Mathematics in Phillips Exeter Academy.

A DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. With numerous Examples and Applications. Designed for use as a College Text-book. By W. E. Byerly, Ph.D., Harvard University. This book has been used two years in Harvard in manuscript form. (*Ready in July.*)

A N ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA. By George A. Wentworth, Professor of Mathematics in Phillips Exeter Academy.

A GEOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. Adapted to Lower and Grammar School Work. By G. A. Hill, Harvard University. (*Ready in September.*)

The principles which underlie the method employed in this work are the following:—

1. Geometrical instruction for beginners should proceed from the concrete to the abstract.

2. It should seek to develop the intellectual powers, and especially the geometric imagination and the inventive faculty, by stimulating the self-activity of the learner.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

3. It should be practical, — that is to say, it should seize every fitting opportunity to illustrate and explain the material uses of Geometry.

Agreeably to the first of these principles, in the beginning the distinction between a body, a surface, a line, and a point, is shown by the use of models, and later they are again employed to give clear ideas respecting the regular solids. Many conceptions and simple relations — such as occur, for instance, in the subject of parallels, of perpendiculars, of angles, of intersecting lines and planes, of equal figures, of similar figures, of polygons, &c. — are illustrated by reference to well-known objects; and, a variety of questions are asked, which the learner can answer by reflecting upon what he has seen. Throughout the work, definitions are not stated in an abstract form until the ideas which they involve are already known.

In proving theorems, instead of the formal method which begins with the theorem and follows with the proof, unfolded step by step in syllogistic reasoning, the method here adopted begins with the study of a figure and the relations of its parts, and proceeds to the theorem, by the comparison and combination of ideas, much in the same way as the discoverer of the theorem might have done. Care has been taken to select theorems which are simple, and which at the same time form a basis for useful problems and applications. In a few cases, where a theorem was very desirable on account of its applications, while its rigorous proof was clearly beyond the capacity of those for whom the book is designed, the author has not hesitated to substitute a less rigorous proof, or probable reasons of a simple kind. Why it should be thought that, in Geometry, the choice must, in each case, lie between the most refined product of the human intellect and nothing at all, the author is unable to see.

The idea of ratio is made to arise naturally from that of addition; and that of units of measure from that of ratio.

Special stress has been laid upon the laws of the equality and of the similarity of triangles; because, apart from their simple character, they are the keys to nine-tenths at least of the rest of Geometry, both theoretical and practical.

Great pains have been taken to explain, by examples, how geometrical problems are to be attacked and solved; and numerous easy constructions are given, as exercises for the learner.

Exercises are appended to almost every section, and to the end of each chapter, and form one of the chief features of the book. They supply the means of real intellectual training, by throwing the learner on his own resources, and leading him to invent and to generalize for himself. They have been very carefully selected and graded, and, where necessary, hints for their solution have been added.

Among the applications of Geometry which find a place in the work may be mentioned the testing of vertical and horizontal directions, drawing lines

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

to scale, the construction of perpendicular lines and of angles on the ground, the application of the laws of the equality and similarity of triangles to the measurement of inaccessible distances, and a great number and variety of practical exercises upon the computation of lengths, areas, and volumes.

It is a great mistake to suppose that it requires any peculiar talent to understand the elements of Geometry. On the contrary, it is easier to trace the simple relations of forms and magnitudes than to trace, for example, those of numbers, because forms and magnitudes are concrete things while numbers are abstract; and Fröbel, the founder of the kindergarten, recognized this fact by choosing the most important means of object teaching out of the field of Geometry.

Everything depends on the *method*. Pestalozzi first showed how to make Geometry an easy, interesting, and profitable subject of study, in early education. His method, modified and improved by his successors, is now to be found under various forms in many excellent German text-books, and is now taught in German schools.

This method, in the main, is here adopted. The author has made a careful study of the best French and German text-books, and has seen the method in actual operation in the German schools. He is convinced that it is the true and only method for beginners.

The present work is adapted to ordinary pupils from twelve to fifteen years of age. It forms a suitable introduction to higher works on the same subject, and at the same time contains so much of Geometry as every one, women not excepted, may study with the greatest interest and profit. Had this method of teaching Geometry found the same foothold here that it has in Germany, there is little doubt in the author's mind that before now the subject would be here as it is in Germany, and ought to be everywhere, a part of common-school education.

GEOMETRICAL EXERCISES AND KEY TO EXERCISES IN WENTWORTH'S GEOMETRY. (*Ready in July.*)

SMALLER FOUR-PLACE TABLES OF LOGARITHMS. By James Mills Peirce, University Professor of Mathematics in Harvard College.

Under this name, the principal tables of the author's *Three and Four-Place Tables*, with some additions (among which are tables of the Hyperbolic Functions and of Squares and Reciprocals), are published in a duodecimo form, but in a clear, handsome, and good-sized type, cast for the purpose. The main features of the *Three and Four-Place Tables* are retained, so far as the size of the page permits; but the arrangement is in some respects improved, and is made readily intelligible to beginners in the use of logarithms. Full explanations are given with the tables.

The book may be had either separately or bound with the author's "Elements of Logarithms," or with "Wheeler's Trigonometry."

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

SCIENCE.

GUIDES FOR SCIENCE-TEACHING. Designed to supplement Lectures given to Teachers of the Public Schools of Boston, by the Boston Society of Natural History. They are intended for the use of Teachers who desire to practically instruct classes in Natural History. Besides simple illustrations and instructions as to the modes of presentation and study, there are, in each pamphlet, hints which will be found useful in preserving, preparing, collecting and purchasing specimens.

No. I. About Pebbles. By Alpheus Hyatt, Custodian of the Boston Society of Natural History, and Professor of Zoölogy and Paleontology in the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. This pamphlet is an illustration of the way in which a common object may be used profitably in teaching. This was the opening lecture of the course, and the one which gave rise to these little books. Price to Teachers, postpaid, 15 cents.

No. II. Concerning a Few Common Plants. By George L. Goodale, Professor of Botany in Harvard University. This is complete in two parts (which are bound together), and gives an account of the organs or "helpful parts" of plants, and how these can be cultivated and used in the schoolroom for the mental training of children. Price to Teachers, postpaid, 25 cents.

No. III. Commercial and other Sponges. By Professor Alpheus Hyatt. This gives an account of the Sponges in common use, and of their Structure, &c. *Illustrated by 7 plates.* Price to Teachers, postpaid, 30 cents.

No. IV. A First Lesson in Natural History. By Mrs. Elizabeth Agassiz. *Illustrated by woodcuts and 4 plates.* Price to Teachers, postpaid, 35 cents.

No. V. Corals and Echinoderms. By Professor Alpheus Hyatt. *Illustrated.* Price to Teachers, postpaid, 30 cents.

The remaining numbers of the Series cannot be issued until the coming fall, beginning in October. There will be eight more numbers, at the same average prices (ranging from 20 cents to 40 cents). The number on Insects may exceed this price, if the different orders are illustrated.

No. VI. Mollusca. Oyster, Clam, and Snail.

No. VII. Worms and Crustacea. Earth Worm, Lobster, Common Crab.

No. VIII. Insects. Grasshopper.

No. IX. Fishes. Yellow Perch.

No. X. Frogs. Common Frog and Toad.

No. XI. Reptiles. Alligators and Tortoises.

No. XII. Birds.

No. XIII. Mammals. Common Rat.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

